MISSION STATEMENT

Our mission is to be an outstanding teaching and research university, educating for life and addressing the challenges facing our society.

Educating for life means that our educational process must provide:
* a foundation of skills, knowledge and versatility that will last a lifetime, despite a changing environment;
* research-based teaching and learning;
* critical inquiry in the form of the search for new knowledge and better understanding; and
* an active developmental role in our cultural, economic, political, scientific and social environment.

Addressing the challenges facing our society means that we must come to terms with our past, be cognisant of the present, and plan for the future. In this, it is central to our mission that we:
* recognise our location in Africa and our historical context;
* claim our place in the international community of scholars;
* strive to transcend the legacy of apartheid in South Africa and to overcome all forms of gender and other oppressive discrimination;
* be flexible on access, active in redress, and rigorous on success;
* promote equal opportunity and the full development of human potential;
* strive for inter-disciplinary and inter-institutional collaboration and synergy; and
* value and promote the contribution that all our members make to realising our mission.

To equip people with lifelong skills we must and will:
* promote the love of learning, the skill of solving problems, and the spirit of critical inquiry and research; and
* take excellence as the benchmark for all we do.

We are committed to academic freedom, critical scholarship, rational and creative thought, and free inquiry. It is part of our mission to ensure that these ideals live; this necessarily requires a dynamic process of finding the balance in a range of choices: choices between freedom and responsibility, rights and obligations, autonomy and accountability, transparency and efficiency, and permanence and transience; and of doing this through consultation and debate.
UNIVERSITY OF CAPE TOWN

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES
(UNDERGRADUATE)
2008

Postal Address: University of Cape Town
Private Bag X3
7701 RONDEBOSCH

Dean's & Faculty Offices: Room 107, Beattie Building
University Avenue
Upper Campus

Office Hours: Mondays to Fridays: 08:30 - 12:30; 13:30 - 16:30

Fax: Dean's/Faculty Office (021) 686-9840
Graduate School (021) 650-5751
Undergraduate Office (021) 686-7469

Telephones: Dean's Office (021) 650-3059
Faculty Office (021) 650-4215/6
Graduate School (021) 650-2691
Undergraduate Office (021) 650-2717/2716/2760
Accounts and Fees (021) 650-1704/4076
Admissions (021) 650-2129/2130

Internet: UCT's Home Page http://www.uct.ac.za
Humanities Home Page http://www.uct.ac.za/faculties/humanities/
Dean's Office hum-dean@uct.ac.za
Faculty Office (Undergrad) hum-ugrad@uct.ac.za
International Academic Programmes Office iapo@world.uct.ac.za
Information for prospective international students can be obtained at http://www.uct.ac.za/about/iapo/overview/welcome/

This handbook is part of a series that consists of
Book 1: Undergraduate Prospectus
Book 2: Authorities and Information of Record
Book 3: General Rules and Policies
Book 4: Academic Calendar and Meetings
Book 5: Student Support and Services
Books 6-11: Handbooks of the Faculties of Commerce, Engineering and the Built Environment, Health Sciences, Humanities, Law, Science
Book 12: Student Fees
Book 13: Bursary and Loan Opportunities for Undergraduate Study
Book 14: Financial Assistance for Postgraduate Students
CONTENTS

General Information........................................................................................................... 1
Officers in the Faculty........................................................................................................ 2
Fellows in the Faculty ........................................................................................................ 2
Distinguished Professors in the Faculty ........................................................................... 2
Distinguished Teachers in the Faculty ............................................................................. 2
UCT Book Award.............................................................................................................. 3
Humanities Students' Council .......................................................................................... 3
Scholarships and Prizes .................................................................................................... 3
Terms for 2008 .................................................................................................................. 7
Undergraduate degrees, diplomas and certificates awarded in the Faculty ................... 7
Named degree programmes offered in the Faculty ....................................................... 7
Requirements for recognition of university degrees for teaching purposes .................. 8
Abbreviations and definitions ......................................................................................... 8

Structure of Course Codes............................................................................................... 9

Faculty Rules................................................................................................................... 10

Guidelines for General BA and BSoSc Degree Programmes........................................ 24

Named BA and BSoSc Degree Programmes
Film and Media Production ............................................................................................. 26
Labour, Organisational Psychology and Human Resource Management .................... 27
Philosophy, Politics and Economics .............................................................................. 29
Social Work (BSoSc) ........................................................................................................ 30
Social Work (BSW) ......................................................................................................... 31

Extended Degree Programme: Quantitative .................................................................. 34

Extended Degree Programme: Non-Quantitative.......................................................... 38

Faculty Courses............................................................................................................. 39

Summer/Winter Term Courses ....................................................................................... 40

Departments and Courses Offered
Accounting...................................................................................................................... 41
African Gender Institute ................................................................................................. 43
African Studies, Centre for ............................................................................................ 46
Archaeology .................................................................................................................... 48
Commercial Law ........................................................................................................... 52
Drama .............................................................................................................................. 55
Economics, School of .................................................................................................... 61
Education, School of ....................................................................................................... 70
English Language and Literature ................................................................................... 74

Linguistics Section ......................................................................................................... 76
Environmental and Geographical Science ....................................................................... 83
Film and Media Studies, Centre for .............................................................................. 86
Geological Sciences ....................................................................................................... 93
Historical Studies ........................................................................................................... 95
Information and Library Studies ..................................................................................... 108
Information Systems ...................................................................................................... 109
Languages and Literatures, School of .......................................................................... 110

African Languages and Literatures Section ................................................................ 111
Afrikaans Section ........................................................................................................... 115
Arabic Language and Literature Section ..................................................................... 118
Classics Section ............................................................................................................. 119
The University has made every effort to ensure the accuracy of the information in its handbooks. However, we reserve the right at any time, if circumstances dictate (for example, if there are not sufficient students registered), to

(i) make alterations or changes to any of the published details of the opportunities on offer; or
(ii) add to or withdraw any of the opportunities on offer.

Our students are given every assurance that changes to opportunities will only be made under compelling circumstances and students will be fully informed as soon as possible.
GENERAL INFORMATION

Officers in the Faculty

Dean

Executive Assistant

Professor M P Ensor, BSocSc Natal BA(Hons) Cape Town DipTertEd Unisa CertEd MSc(Ed) PhD Lond
Mrs C T Ravens

Director of the Graduate School and Deputy Dean (Research and Postgraduate Affairs)

Professor J P Muller, MA UPE Doctorandus Leiden PhD Cape Town

Deputy Dean (Finance and Space)

Professor D Wardle, MA DPhil Oxon

Deputy Dean (Staffing and IT)

Associate Professor S G Swartz, PhD Cape Town

Deputy Dean (Undergraduate Affairs)

Associate Professor R Mendelsohn, BA(Hons) Cape Town PhD Witwatersrand

Director: Undergraduate Studies

Mr D B MacLaughlin, BA Yale MSc Lond

Faculty Manager: Academic Administration

Ms L Rautenbach, BA Rhodes BA(Hons) Unisa
Ms C Nixon
Ms J Luyt, BSc(Hons) MSc Cape Town
(Vacant)

Faculty Finance Manager

Ms V Seaton-Smith, BCom UPE
Ms T Tomlinson
Mr N Daniels
(Vacant)

Human Resource Management:

Ms C Tuomi, Advanced Certificate in HE Management Cape Town
Ms A Mossop, BA Advanced Certificate in HE Management Cape Town

Graduate School in Humanities:

Graduate Programmes Officer

Ms A Wegerhoff

Undergraduate Administration:

Undergraduate Programmes Officer

(Vacant)
Mrs L A Collins, BSocSc PGDipMan(HRM) Cape Town

Administrative Officer

Mrs K Khan, BSc Unisa

Administrative Assistant

Mrs Z Mdwarra, BA PGDipMan(Org & Man) Cape Town

Administrative Assistant

Ms V Mzamo
Ms L Stemela
Ms S Weber

Information Technology Manager

Ms V Scholtz, BCom(Hons) PGDipAfricanStudies Cape Town
Fellows in the Faculty

The Council of the University has established Fellowships for members of the permanent academic staff in recognition of original distinguished academic work of such quality as to merit special recognition. The following are current members of staff of the Faculty of Humanities who have received Fellowships:

Professor J Alexander  Professor J Higgins
Professor A Brink  Professor P J L Klatzow
Professor D Chidester  Professor R G Lass
Professor J M Coetzee  Professor W R Nasson
Professor B Cooper  Distinguished Professor Ph-J Salazar
Professor J-L Cornille  Professor P Skotnes
Professor J W de Gruchy  Professor M Solms

Distinguished Professors in the Faculty

A Distinguished Professor is the highest academic appointment UCT can make. Such appointments are made for academics who have either excelled beyond their discipline or are considered to be national intellectual assets. The following member of staff of the Faculty of Humanities has been appointed Distinguished Professor:

Professor Ph-J Salazar  Distinguished Professor in Rhetoric

Distinguished Teachers in the Faculty

The University has instituted a Distinguished Teacher Award in recognition of the importance of excellence in teaching at all levels in the University. The following are current members of staff of the Faculty of Humanities who have received the award:

Mr T Dowdall (Child Guidance Clinic) 1985
Mr N Bakker (School of Education) 1988
Professor H J Snyman (School of Languages and Literatures) 1989
Professor K M McCormick (English Language and Literature) 1990
Associate Professor L Marx (English Language and Literature) 1992
Professor N Worden (Historical Studies) 1992
Mrs G Solomons (School of Languages and Literatures) 1993
Associate Professor C Weare (Drama) 1993
Associate Professor M Adhikari (Historical Studies) 1995
Associate Professor R Mendelsohn (Historical Studies) 1996
Ms S Stern (S A College of Music) 1997
Professor D H Foster (Psychology) 1999
Professor W R Nasson (Historical Studies) 1999
Professor D Benatar (Philosophy) 1999
Professor V Bickford-Smith (Historical Studies) 2000
Associate Professor R S Edgecombe (English Language and Literature) 2001
Professor H Phillips (Historical Studies) 2001
Associate Professor A Mager (Historical Studies) 2002
Associate Professor B Liebl (South African College of Music) 2003
Dr P Anderson (English Language and Literature) 2005
Ms Y Banning (Drama) 2005
Dr Z Erasmus (Sociology) 2006
Ms E Mills (Drama) 2006
Associate Professor J Bennett (African Gender Institute) 2007
**UCT Book Award**

The University Book Award recognises the publication of books, written by University staff, that bring credit to the University. The following are current members of staff of the Faculty of Humanities who have received the award:

- **Professor J M Coetzee**  
  *Waiting for the Barbarians*  
  1984

- **Professor R G Lass**  
  *The Shape of English: Structure and History*  
  1988

- **Professor J M Coetzee**  
  *Age of Iron*  
  1990

- **Associate Professor R Mendelsohn**  
  *Sammy Marks, "The Uncrowned King of the Transvaal"*  
  1991

- **Professors P Skotnes, S P Watson, J Parkington and Associate Professor N G Penn**  
  *Sound from the Thinking Strings*  
  1992

- **Professor W R Nasson**  
  *Abraham Esau's War*  
  1993

- **Professor M Shain**  
  *The Roots of Antisemitism in South Africa*  
  1996

- **Professor V Bickford-Smith**  
  *Ethnic Pride and Racial Prejudice in Victorian Cape Town: Group Identity and Social Practice, 1875-1902*  
  1998

- **Professor J Higgins**  
  *Raymond Williams*  
  2000

- **Associate Professor N G Penn**  
  *Rogues, Rebels and Runaways*  
  2001

- **Professor W R Nasson**  
  *Britannia’s Empire – Making a British World*  
  2007

**Humanities Students' Council**

The Humanities Students' Council (HSC) is elected annually by the students in the Faculty of Humanities. The HSC is concerned with the academic and social interests of Humanities students, and liaises with the Dean and other academic and administrative staff in the Faculty. The HSC is housed in Room 27b, Beattie Building.

**Scholarships and prizes**

The Faculty administers the following undergraduate and postgraduate scholarships, bursaries and prizes which have been established through the generosity of past and present donors. Details of undergraduate and postgraduate scholarships and bursaries can be found in Handbook 13: *Bursary and Loan Opportunities for Undergraduate Study* and in Handbook 14: *Financial Assistance for Postgraduate Students*. Details of the prizes can be obtained from the Departments concerned.

**ALL DEPARTMENTS**

Twamley Undergraduate Scholarship

**INTER-FACULTY PRIZE**

In the field of social/political relations in the South African context

Arnold Wynne Prize

**AFRICAN STUDIES, CENTRE FOR**

Jack Simons Bursary

Harry Oppenheimer Scholarship

**DANCE**

Ballet School Award

Sonia Brookes Prize

Mignon Furman Prize
4 GENERAL INFORMATION

Joan Honiball Prize
Eoan Group Ballet Bursary
Mary Renault Scholarship
Council Music Scholarships
Triegaardt Prize
Soroptomist Bursary

DRAMA
Camps Bay Operatic and Dramatic Society Bursary Trust
Cecilia Sonnenberg Bursary
Eli Wallendorf Prize
Gretel Mills Book Prize
Leonard Schach Bequest
Louis Epstein Bursary
Moyra Fine Scholarship
Peter Lamsley Scholarship
Rosalie van der Gucht Award
Ruth Peffers Prize
Speech Training Scholarship
Victoria League English Speech Scholarship

EDUCATION, SCHOOL OF
Director of the School of Education Prizes
Whitton Award
The Marie Grant Memorial Book Prize

ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE
Dorothy Cavers Essay Prize
English Honours Book Award
Thelma Tyfield Prize

FILM AND MEDIA STUDIES, CENTRE FOR
Robin Cohen Prizes

FINE ART, MICHAELIS SCHOOL OF
Anonymous Fine Art Bursary
Katrine Harries Memorial Bursary
Eduard Louis Ladan Bursary
Stella Shawzin Bursary
Simon Gerson Prize
David Marais Memorial Prize
The Michaelis Prize
Judy Steinberg Prize
Matthew Somers Memorial Prize
MacIver Scholarship
Outa Scholarship
C G Saker Scholarship
Irma Stern Scholarship
Jules Kramer Music & Fine Art Grant
Katrine Harries Print Cabinet Award
HISTORICAL STUDIES
Charles Struben Scholarship
Mandelbrote Book Prize
Marie Maud Memorial Book Prize
Eric Axelsson African History Book Prize
The Diocesan College UCT 150 Memorial Book Prize

INFORMATION AND LIBRARY STUDIES
Patricia Ashby Spilhaus Memorial Bursary
Hilda Buyskes Bursary
Exclusive Books Award
Exclusive Books Library and Information Science Prize
Wordsworth Books Prize

KAPLAN CENTRE FOR JEWISH STUDIES AND RESEARCH
Bender Memorial Scholarship
Max and Rose Leiserowitz Scholarship
Annie & Lazarus Hoffman Prize

LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES, SCHOOL OF
African Languages and Literatures Section
Lestrade Scholarship
Afrikaans Section
Algemeen Nederlands Verbond Prizes
Creative Writing Bursaries
I D du Plessis Scholarship
J B M Hertzog Scholarship
J J Smith Gedenkbeurs
Koopmans de Wet Scholarship
Nederlandse Taalunie Bursaries
Van Ewijck Foundation Scholarship
Classics (Latin and Greek) Section
Douallier Prize
Mary Renault Memorial PEN Prize
Lawrence Prize
William Rollo Prize
French Language and Literature Section
French Embassy Scholarships
German Language and Literature Section
German Academic Exchange Service (DAAD) Scholarship
German Consulate General Book Prizes
Hebrew Language and Literature Section
Ivor Lewin Prize
Issy Sachar Memorial Essay Prize
Issy Sachar Memorial Prize for Hebrew Intensive
Italian Studies Section
Friulian Society Scholarship
Dante Alighieri Book Prizes
6 GENERAL INFORMATION

MUSIC, SOUTH AFRICAN COLLEGE OF
Erik Chisholm Memorial Graduate Bursary
Ascher Kellman Bursaries
Percival R Kirby Memorial Scholarship
Jules Kramer Music and Fine Arts Scholarships and Grants
Michael Geoffrey Brumage Bursary
Leah Gamsa Sixpence Bursary
Myra Chapman Scholarship (Undergraduate)
Myra Chapman Graduate Scholarship
I Musicanti Chamber Orchestra Award
Van Hulsteyn Scholarship
Alba Windham Scholarship
Johnny Windham Bursary
Ania Pevsner Scholarship
Lionel Bowman Piano Prize
Laura Searle Prize for Piano Concerto
Gerry Meyer String Prize
A Rupert Prize
Peter Klatzow Prize
Stephanie Garnett Memorial Prize
Lesley Arnold Prize
Professor WH Bell Prize
Percy Ould Prize
Meyer Levinson Prize
Gregorio Fiasconaro Prize
Alfred Libochowitz Prize
Ruth Ormond Prize
Zook Fields Piano Prize
SACM Jazz Prize
James de Villiers Piano Prize
Paul Bothner Jazz Prize
Eric Chisholm Memorial Prize for Opera
Schott-Tippett Prize for Composition (scores)
Priaulx Rainier Prize for Composition (alternate years)
Council Scholarship for Music (Undergraduate)
Gunter Pulvermacher Research Award

PHILOSOPHY / POLITICAL STUDIES
Mayshel Ticktin Scholarship

PSYCHOLOGY
Dr Sylvia Gavron Scholarship
Phyllis Reyburn Prize
J G Taylor Prize
Lillian Buffenstein Memorial Book Award

RELIGIOUS STUDIES
Clough Eastern Religious Study Fellowship
Lee Petolfe Ballantine Memorial Fund
Hyman Liberman Prize

SOCIAL ANTHROPOLOGY
Ruth Sacks Bursary
SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT
Doreen Geffen Inner Wheel Bursary
IUCISD Prize
Overbeek Scholarship
RS Locums Prize
St Leger Prize

Terms for 2008

First semester: 18 February - 13 June
Mid-term break: 21 March - 30 March
Mid-year vacation: 14 June - 20 July
Second semester: 21 July - 12 December
Mid-term break: 30 August - 7 September

Undergraduate degrees, diplomas and certificates awarded in the Faculty

Bachelor of Arts HB003 BA 3 years
Bachelor of Arts in Fine Art HB008 BA(FA) 4 years
Bachelor of Arts in Theatre and Performance HB014 BA(TP) 4 years
Bachelor of Social Science HB001 BSocSc 3 years
Bachelor of Social Work HB063 BSW 4 years
Bachelor of Music See below BMus 4 years
Bachelor of Music (Dance) HB012 BMus(Dance) 4 years
Dance Teacher's Diploma HU011 DTDip 3 years
Diploma in Education HA006 DipEd 2 years
Diploma in Jazz Studies HU031 DJS 3 years
Performer's Certificate in Dance HU007 PCertDance 2 years
Performer's Certificate in Music HU006 PCM 3 years
Performer's Certificate in Opera HU005 PCO 4 years
Performer's Diploma in Opera HU003 PDO 4 years
Performer's Diploma in Music HU021 PDM 3 years
Performer's Diploma in Theatre HU020 PDT 3 years
Teacher's Licentiate Diploma in Music HU037 TLD 4 years

Named degree programmes offered in the Faculty

Dance [HB012]
Economics and Social Science* [HB047]
Film and Media Production (was Film, Media and Visual Studies) [HB054]
Fine Art [HB008]
Labour, Organisational Psychology and Human Resource Management [HB049]
Music [HB010, HB032, HB057, HB058, HB059, HB060]
Philosophy, Politics and Economics [HB027]
Social Work** [HB007]

Stream 1: Psychological Studies
Stream 2: Industrial, Organisational and Labour Studies
Stream 3: Development Studies and Social Transformation

Theatre and Performance [HB014]
* Not offered to new students as from 2005
** Streams not offered to new students as from 2007
Requirements for recognition of university degrees for teaching purposes

Students wishing to become high school teachers are advised to consult the admission requirements for the Postgraduate Certificate in Education (PGCE) which may be found in the School of Education entry in this Handbook. Full rules and curricular details for the PGCE may be found in the Faculty of Humanities Graduate School Handbook.

Abbreviations and definitions

Programme of study:
A degree or diploma curriculum e.g. the BA degree, or the Performer's Diploma in Theatre.

Course:
A subject course with a duration of one semester (usually coded F or S), or covering a semester's work but spread over the year (usually coded H). A whole-year course (usually coded W) is equivalent to two semester courses.

Major:
A sequence of subject courses at first, second and third year levels defined by the Department teaching the course as a major in that subject.

Senior course:
A subject course which requires prerequisite(s) to be completed in a previous year and which the Faculty of Humanities has recognised as having senior status.

Prerequisite course:
A subject course which a student must have completed in order to gain admission to a senior course.

Co-requisite course:
A subject course for which a student must be registered concurrently with another course.

Exemption:
Exemption from a course means that the course is recognised as a prerequisite for a following course, but that it does not count as a credit.

DP requirements:
The classwork and test results which must be achieved in order to be allowed to write the examination in a course (DP = duly performed).

Part-time student:
A bona fide part-time student in a postgraduate course of study.

Long-term student:
A student who due to work commitments or other duties cannot carry the normal workload and takes the BA degree over a period of up to a maximum of five years.

Finalist:
A student who is expected to complete all requirements for his/her degree in the year of registration.
STRUCTURE OF COURSE CODES

Every course in this Handbook has a course name and a course code (or catalogue number). With the introduction of the PeopleSoft Student Administration system, the structure of course codes has changed from seven characters to eight characters, e.g. ELL113F has become ELL1013F.

The code structure is uniform and it gives important information about the course. Each code has eight characters, as follows: AAA1nnnS, where

AAA is a 3 alpha-character group identifying the department
I is a number representing the year of study in which the course is usually taken
nnn is a 3 character number that identifies the course uniquely
S is a single alpha-character suffix, giving information about the course

Suffixes which are most frequently used in the Faculty are:
F First semester half-course
S Second semester half-course
W Whole-year course
H Half-course taught throughout the year
Z Non-standard period

Other suffixes less frequently used are:
A 1st-quarter course
B 2nd-quarter course
C 3rd-quarter course
D 4th-quarter course
L Winter Term
M Multiterm
X Special allocation

Summer Term courses:
J January - February
P November - December
U November - January

The following examples show how the codes work:
ELL1013F English Literary Studies
ELL designates an English course
I designates a first year course
013 serves to distinguish this course from other first year English courses
F designates a first semester course

HST2035S Gender and History
HST designates a History course
2 designates a second year course
035 serves to distinguish this course from other second year History courses
S designates a second semester course

SLL1002F/S Word Power
This designates that the course is offered in the first semester and again in the second semester.
FACULTY RULES

F1 Notices
All students registered for any courses given in the Faculty are required to consult the notice boards regularly.

F2 Right of admission
The right of admission to lectures, classes and seminars is restricted to students in good standing who are specifically registered for the respective courses concerned. Guests may be admitted at the invitation of the teachers in charge.

F3 Use of premises
The Faculty and Departmental premises shall not, without permission from the Dean or Head of the relevant Department, be used for the sale or distribution of books, papers, or other articles, or for the display of notices or announcements, or for the making of collections for charitable or other purposes, or as an address for personal mail.

F4 Duly performed certificates
A candidate may not sit the examination in a course if he/she has been refused a duly performed certificate for the course (see General Rules for Students GB9.1, 9.2 and 9.3). Conditions for the award of a duly performed certificate are set out in the course description for the course concerned in this Handbook.

F5 Repeating courses
5.1 Except with the permission of the Senate, a student registered in the Faculty of Humanities who fails a University course twice will not be allowed to register for the same course for a third time.
5.2 Should a required course be failed twice (including DPR for the course or ABS from the final examination or supplementary examination), the student will have to transfer to a programme in which the same course is not required, in order to complete the qualification.

F6 Prerequisites for courses
Except with the permission of the Senate, no student shall be admitted to a stipulated course in a subject if he/she has not satisfied the prerequisites for that course.

F7 Programme choice
Students may change their programme with the permission of the Programme Convenor and Dean. Not all courses passed may be credited towards a new named programme.

F8 Distinction in a subject/programme specialisation
Courses considered for purposes of distinction must have been taken at UCT or at an exchange partner institution. Courses passed for credit from other tertiary institutions are not considered for purposes of distinction.
8.1 With the exception of the subjects listed below, the general BA or BSocSc degree may be awarded with a distinction in a subject taken at first attempt, if the candidate has attained an average of 75% in at least four senior semester courses including at least two 3000-level courses required for a major, with no course receiving a mark of less than 70% and the average of the marks awarded for the 3000-level courses being at least 75%, with each 3000-level course receiving a mark of at least 70%. Where the major rules for a subject require the completion of more than four senior semester courses (or the equivalent), the Head of Department shall determine which courses up to a maximum of four senior semester courses shall be considered for distinction in that subject, as long as at least two of those courses are at 3000-level.
8.2 With the exception of the subjects listed below, and where the rules for a
specialisation in a programme or a programme stream require completion, under normal circumstances, of two 2000-level and two 3000-level courses in a sequence of courses from one subject or from various subjects, the named BA or BSocSc degree will be awarded with a distinction in a programme specialisation if a candidate has attained an average of 75% in at least four senior semester courses including at least two 3000-level courses required for a major, with no course receiving a mark of less than 70% and the average of the marks awarded for the 3000-level courses being at least 75%, with each 3000-level course receiving a mark of at least 70%. Where the rules for a specialisation in a programme or a programme stream require completion of more than four senior semester courses (or the equivalent) in a particular programme specialisation, the Programme Convenor shall determine which courses up to a maximum of four senior semester courses shall be considered for distinction in that programme specialisation, as long as at least two of those courses are at 3000-level.

8.3 The following courses which may be taken as major subjects or programme specialisations in the BA and BSocSc degrees are subject to the rules for distinction as determined by those departments:

Archaeology: First-class passes in two 2000-level and two 3000-level courses required for the major subject or programme specialisation.

Economics: An average of 80% or more across ECO3020F and two other 3000-level ECO courses, with first-class passes in at least two of these three courses.

Environmental and Geographical Science: First-class passes in two 2000-level and two 3000-level courses required for the major subject or programme specialisation.

Human Resource Management: First-class passes in two 2000-level and two 3000-level courses required for the major subject or programme specialisation.

Law: A weighted average of 75% in all six law courses taken towards the degree, the weight being in proportion to the credits accruing to those six courses.

Mathematics: First-class passes in MAM2000W and MAM3000W.

Organisational Psychology: First-class passes in two 2000-level and two 3000-level courses required for the major subject or programme specialisation.

Psychology: First-class passes in the following four courses: PSY2006F and one other second-year Psychology course, PSY3007S and one other third-year Psychology course.

Statistics and Applied Statistics: First-class passes in two 2000-level and two 3000-level courses required for the major subject or programme specialisation.

8.9 Distinction in the degree as a whole
Courses considered for purposes of distinction must have been taken at UCT or at an exchange partner institution. Courses passed for credit from other tertiary institutions are not considered for purposes of distinction.

9.1 BA and BSocSc degree
A candidate may be awarded the BA, BSocSc or BSW degree with distinction if he/she obtains first-class passes in a minimum of ten semester courses (or the equivalent), including eight senior semester courses (or the equivalent) and including, under normal circumstances, the courses which gained the student distinction in at least one subject or at least one programme/programme stream specialisation, according to Rule F8 above.

9.2 BA(FA) degree
(a) Award of degree with distinction in Studiowork
This shall be deemed to constitute an overall first-class pass in the Studiowork courses of the second year, an overall first-class pass in the Studiowork courses of the third year and a first-class pass in the major Studiowork course in the fourth year. The degree will be awarded as BA(FA) with distinction in Studiowork.
(b) **Award of degree with distinction in the major Studiowork course**
This shall be based on a mark of 85% or higher in the major Studiowork option taken in the fourth year of study. The degree will be awarded as BA(FA) with distinction in... (name of course).

(c) **Award of degree with distinction in Discourse of Art**
This shall be awarded to a candidate who obtains first-class passes in FIN2021H and FIN2022S, and FIN3022H and FIN3023S. The degree will be awarded as BA(FA) with distinction in Discourse of Art.

(d) **Award of degree with distinction in Theory and Practice of Art**
This shall be awarded to a candidate who obtains an overall mark of at least 85% in FIN3010H Theory and Practice of Art 3 and FIN4011H Theory and Practice of Art 4. The degree will be awarded as BA(FA) with distinction in Theory and Practice of Art.

---

**F10 Distinction in Theatre and Performance**
Courses considered for purposes of distinction must have been taken at UCT or at an exchange partner institution. Courses passed for credit from other tertiary institutions are not considered for purposes of distinction.

10.1 For the degree to be awarded with distinction, a candidate must obtain first-class passes in at least three senior courses not listed below, and must have obtained a first-class pass in at least three of the following courses:
- DRM4030W Acting IV (English)
- DRM4031W Acting IV (Bilingual)
- DRM4034W Theatre Making IV
- DRM4032H Voice IV (English)
- DRM4033H Voice IV (Bilingual)
- DRM3026H Movement III
- DRM4000H Theatre and Research
- DRM4002H Play Directing

10.2 For the diploma to be awarded with distinction, a candidate must obtain first-class passes in at least five courses, including at least two of the following:
- DRM3035W Acting Practice III (English)
- DRM3036W Acting Practice III (Bilingual)
- DRM3037H Voice Practice III (English)
- DRM3038H Voice Practice III (Bilingual)
- DRM3026H Movement III
- DRM3027H Professional Practice in the Theatre
- DRM3028W Community Theatre Practice
- DRM3029H Theatre Fieldwork
- DRM3021H Performance Skills

---

**F11 Distinction in degrees, diplomas and certificates offered in the School of Dance**
Courses considered for purposes of distinction must have been taken at UCT or at an exchange partner institution. Courses passed for credit from other tertiary institutions are not considered for purposes of distinction.

11.1 All undergraduate degrees, diplomas and certificates in the School of Dance may be awarded with distinction, or with distinction in individual subjects, or both.

11.2 To qualify for the award of a degree, diploma or certificate with distinction, an undergraduate must obtain an aggregate of at least 75% from the second year of study onwards.

11.3 To qualify for the award of distinction in a subject an undergraduate must obtain:

(a) in a subject that extends over four years, no fewer than two passes in the first-class and two in the second class (first division); provided that the candidate shall obtain at least 80% in the fourth year of that subject.

(b) in a subject that extends over three years, no fewer than two passes in the
first-class and one in the second class (first division); provided that the candidate shall obtain at least 80% in the third year of that subject.

(c) in the Performer's Certificate in Dance: in a subject that extends over two years, not less than two passes in the first-class; provided that the candidate shall obtain at least 80% in the second year of that subject.

F12 Distinction in degrees, diplomas and certificates offered in the SA College of Music

Courses considered for purposes of distinction must have been taken at UCT or at an exchange partner institution. Courses passed for credit from other tertiary institutions are not considered for purposes of distinction.

12.1 All undergraduate degrees, diplomas and certificates in the SA College of Music may be awarded with distinction, or with distinction in individual subjects, or both.

12.2 To qualify for the award of a degree, diploma or certificate with distinction, an undergraduate must obtain an aggregate of at least 75% from the second year of study onwards for all courses in the curriculum.

12.3 Degrees and diplomas must be completed in the minimum required time (i.e., students must carry and pass the full load of courses for each year of study).

12.4 To qualify for the award of distinction in a subject an undergraduate must obtain:

(a) in a subject that extends over four years, no fewer than two passes in the first-class and two in the second class (first division); provided that the candidate shall obtain at least 80% in the fourth year of that subject.

(b) in a subject that extends over three years, no fewer than two passes in the first-class and one in the second class (first division); provided that the candidate shall obtain at least 80% in the third year of that subject.

F13 Distinction in the Diploma in Education (formerly the Certificate in Adult Education, Training and Development)

The certificate may be awarded with distinction where an overall average result of 75% or more is obtained. Courses considered for purposes of distinction must have been taken at UCT or at an exchange partner institution. Courses passed for credit from other tertiary institutions are not considered for purposes of distinction.

F14 Transferring students

14.1 A student who has not been excluded from another faculty may transfer to the Faculty of Humanities for the purpose of taking the BA, BA(FA), BMus, BSoSc or BSW degree, provided that such student satisfies the requirements for admission as a candidate for that degree. A student excluded from another faculty will not be accepted by the Faculty of Humanities without the permission of the Faculty's Readmission Review Committee.

14.2 A student transferring to the Faculty of Humanities from another university may be granted credit or exemption or both for up to a maximum of eight semester courses (or equivalent) towards the BA, BSoSc or BSW degree. Such a transferring student will be required to complete the remaining required full courses (or equivalent in half-courses) prescribed for the degree, including, where applicable, all 3000-level courses required for the major, at this University over a period of not less than two years.

In the case of a student wishing to transfer into the BA(FA) degree, no more than four full courses (or equivalent in half-courses) in studiowork subjects, and a further one full course (or equivalent in half-courses) in other Humanities subjects, may be offered for credit or exemption, on recommendation of the Director of the Michaelis School of Fine Art.

F15 Class medals

15.1 A list of class medallists is published every December, once approved by the Faculty Examinations Committee.

15.2 Any student taking a course for the second time is ineligible for any medal or prize
in that class. Occasional students are ineligible for class medals.
15.3 Medals may be awarded only to those students who have shown special ability.
15.4 Only one medal will be awarded in a class, irrespective of the number of students in the class.
15.5 Class medals may be awarded to the best student in any single course, combination of, or selection of courses approved by the Senate in any subject recognised for the degrees of BA, BSoScSc and BSW in the Faculty of Humanities.
15.6 Class medals may be awarded to the best student in each stream in each year of study for degrees, diplomas and certificates in Music and Dance.
15.7 Class medals may be awarded to the best student in studiowork in all years of study, except for the third year elective, Digital Arts 3 (FIN3021H), or in a combination of courses recognised by the Senate for the degree of BA(FA) in the Faculty of Humanities.
15.8 Class medals may be awarded to the best student in each stream in each year of study for the degree and the diploma in Theatre and Performance.

**Dean’s merit list**
The Dean’s merit list is published annually. It contains the names of students whose academic performance over the year is meritorious (70% average on full course load) and hence worthy of recognition. Students who qualify for inclusion in the list will receive a letter of commendation from the Dean. “Full course load” is interpreted to mean:
(a) in the case of named degree programmes, the minimum course load prescribed for a particular year of study;
(b) in the case of general degree programmes, the first year of registration for the degree must include the top 8 semester courses, the second year of registration must include the top 6 semester courses (including the courses for the majors and at least 5 senior semester courses), and the third year of registration must include the remaining courses necessary for the degree.

**Credits towards second UCT degree**
A student who has completed any course or courses for which credit may be given towards one or more degrees in the University and has obtained one of these degrees may be granted credit(s) and/or exemption(s) in respect of such course(s) towards another degree in the University; provided that no such student shall be admitted to such other degree unless he/she has, in respect of that degree:
(a) for a three-year degree: registered for at least two years and while so registered, completed at least one half of the courses prescribed for the degree including the final course(s) in his/her major subject(s);
(b) provided further that the Senate may, in a case considered by it to be exceptional, and on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty, admit to the degree a student who has only partially complied with the requirements of clause (a).

**Concurrent registration**
18.1 *At another university:*
Except with the permission of the Senate, a student may not register for any course taken at another university in the same year during which such student is registered at the University of Cape Town.
18.2 *For two succeeding courses:*
Except with the permission of the Senate, concurrent registration for two succeeding courses will not be permitted.
(For further information on concurrent registration, see the *Guideline to the taking of courses at other institutions as part of a UCT degree* at the end of this section.)

**Recognition of credits for courses taken at other institutions**
Students who are not transferring students will not be allowed to bring credits from elsewhere if they have not attempted the full curriculum at UCT.
Minimum requirements for readmission and promotion:

F20  Minimum requirements for readmission: BA and BSocSc degrees

20.1 General and Named Degree Programmes

Readmission:
Except with the permission of the Senate, a full-time student shall not be permitted to renew registration in the Faculty either as a full-time or part-time student, if he/she has not passed at least three semester courses in the most recent year of registration and if he/she has not passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:

(a) First year:
   four semester courses, or equivalent, qualifying for the degree;
(b) Second year:
   nine semester courses, or equivalent, qualifying for the degree, with a minimum of four qualifying towards a named programme;
(c) Third year:
   fourteen semester courses, or equivalent, including five senior semester courses qualifying for the degree with a minimum of nine qualifying towards a named programme;
(d) Fourth year:
   twenty semester courses, or equivalent, including ten senior semester courses qualifying for the degree with a minimum of fifteen qualifying towards a named programme.

Exclusion:
Except with the permission of the Senate, a full-time student shall be excluded from the Faculty either as a full-time or part-time student, if he/she has not passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:

(a) First year:
   at least three semester courses;
(b) Second year:
   at least five semester courses;
(c) Third year:
   at least eleven semester courses, including at least two senior semester courses;
(d) Fourth year:
   at least sixteen semester courses;
(e) Fifth year:
   met the requirements for the degree.

20.2 Extended Degree Programme: Quantitative

Readmission:
Except with the permission of the Senate, a full-time student shall not be permitted to renew registration in the Faculty either as a full-time or part-time student, if he/she has not passed at least three semester courses in the most recent year of registration and if he/she has not passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:

(a) First year:
   three semester courses, including REL1012F/S (or REL1013H) or DOH1002F (or, if necessary, DOH1004S) and one of MAM1014F, MAM1015S and MAM1016S;
(b) Second year:
   seven semester courses, or equivalent, qualifying for the degree, including REL1012F/S (or REL1013H), DOH1002F (or, if necessary, DOH1004S), MAM1014F and one of MAM1015S or MAM1016S;
(c) Third year:
   thirteen semester courses, or equivalent, including four senior semester
courses qualifying for the degree;

(d) **Fourth year:**
    twenty semester courses or equivalent, including ten senior semester courses qualifying for the degree.

**Exclusion:**
Except with the permission of the Senate, a full-time student in the Quantitative Extended Degree programme shall be excluded from the Faculty either as a full-time or part-time student, if he/she has not passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:

(a) **First year:**
    at least two semester courses, including REL1012F/S (or REL1013H) or DOH1002F or DOH1004S;

(b) **Second year:**
    at least four semester courses, including REL1012F/S (or REL1013H) and both MAM1014F and MAM1015S/MAM1016S;

(c) **Third year:**
    at least ten semester courses, including at least two senior semester courses;

(d) **Fourth year:**
    at least sixteen semester courses;

(e) **Fifth year:**
    met the requirements for the degree.

20.3 **Extended Degree Programme: Non-Quantitative**

**Readmission:**
Except with the permission of the Senate, a full-time student shall not be permitted to renew registration in the Faculty either as a full-time or part-time student, if he/she has not passed at least three semester courses in the most recent year of registration and if he/she has not passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:

(a) **First year:**
    three semester courses, including DOH1002F (or, if necessary, DOH1004S) and REL1012F/S (or REL1013H);

(b) **Second year:**
    seven semester courses, or equivalent, qualifying for the degree, including DOH1002F (or DOH1004S), and REL1012F/S (or REL1013H);

(c) **Third year:**
    thirteen semester courses, or equivalent, including four senior semester courses qualifying for the degree;

(d) **Fourth year:**
    twenty semester courses or equivalent, including ten senior semester courses qualifying for the degree.

**Exclusion:**
Except with the permission of the Senate, a full-time student in the Non-Quantitative Extended Degree programme shall be excluded from the Faculty either as a full-time or part-time student, if he/she has not passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:

(a) **First year:**
    at least two semester courses, including REL1012F/S (or REL1013H) or DOH1002F or DOH1004S;

(b) **Second year:**
    at least four semester courses, including DOH1002F (or DOH1004S) and REL1012F/S (or REL1013H);

(c) **Third year:**
    at least ten semester courses, including at least two senior semester courses;
(d) **Fourth year:**
at least sixteen semester courses;
(e) **Fifth year:**
met the requirements for the degree.

20.4 Except with the permission of the Senate, students registered in named programmes will be expected to complete all first-year curriculum requirements (including electives) by the end of the second year of study, and all second-year curriculum requirements (including electives) by the end of the fourth year of study. Where possible, students will be expected to register for Summer Term courses in order to fulfil these requirements.

Except with the permission of the Senate, students registered in general degree programmes (with two majors) will be expected to complete all first-year curriculum requirements (including electives) by the end of the second year of study, and all second-year curriculum requirements (including electives) by the end of the fourth year of study. Where possible, students will be expected to register for Summer Term courses in order to fulfil these requirements.

20.5 Except with the permission of the Senate, a student who has not completed the requirements for the degree or diploma shall not be permitted to register at the University for more than the following periods:
- BA and BSocSc students: five years
- BA(FA) students: six years
- BA(TP) students: six years
- BMus (Music) students: six years
- BMus (Dance) students: six years
- BSW students: six years
- Teacher's Licentiate Diploma: six years
- Performer's Diploma in Music: five years
- Performer's Diploma in Opera: six years
- Performer's Diploma in Theatre: five years
- Diploma in Jazz Studies: five years

20.6 A student who is refused permission to re-register in the Faculty may appeal to the Faculty Readmission Review Committee in accordance with procedures laid down by that Committee. The decision of the Readmission Review Committee shall be final.

20.7 The registration of a student transferring from another faculty or another post secondary education institution, or who is permitted to register by Senate and who has not met the minimum requirements of Rule 20.1 above, shall be subject to such special conditions as the Senate may prescribe. Except by permission of the Senate, a student who fails to satisfy these conditions shall not be permitted to renew registration in the Faculty.

F21 **Minimum requirements for readmission: Performer's Diploma in Theatre (PDT)**

21.1 A candidate for the PDT who fails Speech, Movement or Acting in any year will not be permitted to renew his/her registration for the diploma without the permission of the Senate. Where such permission is given, the candidate will be required to attend all the classes in Speech, Movement and Acting for that year.

21.2 Except by permission of the Senate a candidate for the PDT who fails to complete any course prescribed for the diploma after two years of registration for that course shall not be permitted to re-register for the course or the diploma.

F22 **Minimum requirements for readmission: BA (Fine Art)**

22.1 A candidate who does not fulfil the following requirements will not be readmitted to this degree or another degree, except with permission of the Senate:
(a) A candidate must pass FIN1001W Studiowork 1 by the end of the first year;
(b) A candidate must pass the FIN1003H and FIN1004S courses by the end of the
Failure to fulfil these requirements will mean that the candidate will not be readmitted to the Faculty and the candidate will be required to pass History of Art 1 through the University of South Africa before being considered for readmission to the Faculty.

If there are extenuating circumstances, Senate may permit the candidate to renew his/her registration on the condition that he/she, after consultation with the Director of the Michaelis School of Fine Art, registers for either:

- Discourse of Art 1 at the University; or
- History of Art 1 through the University of South Africa.

Failure to complete the course by the end of the year for which readmission was granted would mean that the candidate would not be permitted to renew his/her registration in the Faculty until such time as evidence has been submitted that he/she has completed Discourse of Art 1 or an equivalent course.

22.2 Subject to the provisions of Rule F5, a candidate who fails in Discourse of Art 2 course(s) or a BA subject in two consecutive years will only be considered for readmission once he/she has passed the equivalent failed course(s) through the University of South Africa.

Minimum requirements for readmission: Undergraduate degrees, diplomas and certificates offered by the SA College of Music

Except by permission of Senate, a student shall not be permitted to renew his/her registration in the Faculty unless he/she

(a) completes, during the first year of registration in the first year of a curriculum, at least three core academic courses and the principal practical course prescribed for the first-year curriculum; and

(b) completes, during the first year of registration in the second year of a curriculum, at least three core academic courses and the principal practical course prescribed for the second-year curriculum; and

(c) can complete the requirements for the relevant programme in a period not exceeding the minimum duration of the programme by more than two years.

Prerequisites for courses and promotion

24.1 Except with the permission of the Senate, no student shall be admitted to a stipulated course in a subject if he/she has not satisfied the prerequisites for that course.

24.2 A candidate for the BA(FA) degree must complete FIN1001W Studiowork 1 before admission to any second year Studiowork course.

24.3 A candidate for the BA(FA) degree must achieve a pass mark of 55% for the studiowork option at the end of the second year in order to be admitted to a majoring course in the third year. A candidate who passes in a prospective major area with less than 55% will be required to submit a supplementary body of work as specified by the School which will be examined before registration in the following year.

24.4 A candidate for the Diploma in Education (formerly Certificate in Adult Education, Training and Development) shall pass year one of the certificate in order to gain access to year two.

Examinations:

Supplementary examinations and re-examination for all qualifications offered by the Faculty (see also Rule GB11 in Handbook 3)

25.1 The Faculty will not normally award supplementary examinations.

25.2 The Head of the Department may require, on academic grounds, the student to undertake further tests or examinations during the period between the completion of the internal marking process and the finalisation of the results by the external
These further tests or examinations may include the following:
(a) an oral examination;
(b) a further written examination covering specific sections only of the work of the course;
(c) a further written assignment.

**F26 Absence from examination**
If a student does not take a written or practical examination for a course for which he or she is registered in the scheduled and published time, then he or she will be recorded as having been absent from the examination.

**General curriculum rules**

**Bachelor of Arts (HB003) and Bachelor of Social Science (HB001)**
These rules must be read in conjunction with the General Rules for degrees in Book 3 of this series.

**NOTE**: For the purposes of relating the following rules to curricula, it is important to note that a full course carries the same credit as two semester courses or two half courses. In consequence, rules expressed in terms of full courses may be re-expressed in terms of semester or half courses, and vice versa. For the purposes of relevant rules, a whole year full course is regarded as being equivalent to a semester course per semester and a whole year half course as equivalent to half a semester course per semester.

**FB1** The degree may be awarded with distinction (see Faculty Rules F8 and F9).

**FB2** Except by permission of the Senate, a candidate shall not register for:
(a) more than four full courses or eight semester courses in any one academic year;
(b) more than the equivalent of four and a half semester courses in any one semester;
(c) fewer than two full courses, or four semester courses, in their first year of study which will lead, under normal circumstances, to major subjects offered through the Faculty of Humanities.

The curriculum structure shall be as follows:
First year: 8 semester courses
Second year: 6-8 semester courses
Third year: 4-6 semester courses

**FB3** A candidate shall not be credited with having completed any course, or portion of a course, unless he/she has satisfactorily performed such practical work as may be prescribed.

**FB4** The curricula for the following degrees shall extend over the following minimum and maximum periods of time (subject to the Faculty's Readmission Rules [Rule F20]):
(a) General BA and BSocSc degrees: at least three and not more than five academic years;
(b) Extended BA and BSocSc degree programmes: at least four and not more than five academic years;
(c) BA (Theatre & Performance): at least four and not more than six academic years.

**FB5** The curriculum shall add up to at least 20 undergraduate semester courses, a full-year course counting as two semester courses.

**FB6** General programmes leading to the BA and BSocSc degrees

6.1 Major subjects
(a) The curriculum shall include at least two major subjects, each of which consists of at least two semester courses or equivalent (at the 3000-level) and all the prerequisite and co-requisite courses, provided that none of the 2000- or 3000-level courses have been recognised as parts of another major subject. Courses required at 1000-level may be recognised as part of more than one
major subject.

(b) Students must complete at least one major offered by departments established in the Faculty of Humanities (including the School of Economics).

(c) Recognition of a major subject passed at another university: see Rule F14.2 above.

(d) Students who select both majors from the list of Bachelor of Arts majors (see (e) below) will register for a Bachelor of Arts degree. Students who select both majors from the list of Bachelor of Social Science majors (see (f) below) will register for a Bachelor of Social Science degree. Students who select one major from each list will choose to register for either a Bachelor of Arts degree or a Bachelor of Social Science degree. Students who select a major from departments outside the Faculty will register for the Bachelor’s degree (Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Social Science) of the Humanities Faculty major.

(e) Subjects that lead to a Bachelor of Arts degree are the following:
- Afrikaans
- Business French
- Classical Studies
- Dance
- Drama
- Economic History
- English
- Film Studies
- French
- German#
- Hebrew Language and Literature
- History
- Italian
- Jazz Studies
- Law*
- Linguistics
- Mathematics**
- Media and Writing
- Music
- Spanish
- Visual and Art History
- Xhosa

# Please consult the Faculty Office
* Offered through the Faculty of Law
** Offered through the Faculty of Science

(f) Subjects that lead to a Bachelor of Social Science degree are the following:
- Applied Statistics**
- Archaeology**
- Economics***
- Environmental and Geographical Science**
- Gender Studies
- Industrial Sociology
- Organisational Psychology***
- Philosophy
- Politics
- Psychology
- Public Policy and Administration
- Religious Studies
- Social Anthropology
Sociology
Statistics
** Offered through the Faculty of Science
*** Offered through the Faculty of Commerce

(g) The credit requirements for each major subject are published in the departmental entries of this Handbook. No deviations from these requirements are permitted except in exceptional circumstances and only with permission of Senate.

6.2 **Ten senior semester courses**
A candidate shall complete at least ten senior semester courses (or equivalent) selected from courses offered by departments established in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce, Law or Science (including courses offered by the Department of Human Biology through the Faculty of Science), provided the candidate meets the entrance requirements of the courses concerned and subject to the rules below.

6.3 **Number of Humanities courses**
Except by permission of the Senate, the curriculum shall include at least 12 semester courses (or equivalent) offered by departments established in the Faculty of Humanities, including the School of Economics. The remaining courses may include any course offered in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce, Law or Science (including courses offered by the Department of Human Biology through the Faculty of Science), subject to the rules of the faculty concerned and subject to rule FB 6.2 (above) and FB 6.4 (below) and Notes 1 - 7 in this rule (below).

**Notes**

1. **Courses offered by the Department of Drama**
   DRM1017H and DRM1018H will be recognised as part of the curriculum of the general BA and BSocSc degrees. All other 1000, 2000, and 3000-level Professional Theatre Training courses will not be recognised for such purposes.

2. **Courses offered by the Department of Social Development**
The following courses will be recognised as senior courses towards the general BA and BSocSc degrees:
   (a) SWK2060F Social Work Assessment
   (b) SWK2061F Child/Family Welfare and Substance Abuse
   (c) SWK2065S Social Work Intervention
   (d) SWK3060F Developmental Social Work
   (e) SWK3061F Social Work Research
   (f) SWK3065S Professional Development and Management
   (g) SWK3066S Contemporary Social Work Issues
   All Field Practicum courses will not be recognised as part of the general BA and BSocSc degrees.

3. **Courses offered by the Michaelis School of Fine Art**
The following courses will be recognised as part of the general BA and BSocSc degrees:
   1000-level courses:
   (a) FIN1005W Fine Art Foundation Course
   (b) FIN1003H World Art Overview
   (c) FIN1004S Streams of Continental Art
   (d) FIN1001W Studiowork 1
   2000 and 3000-level courses:
   (e) FIN2021H Theories of Art
   (f) FIN2022S 19th, 20th and 21st Century Art
   (g) FIN3010H Theory and Practice of Art 3
   (h) FIN3022H Theorising Contemporary Art
(i) FIN3023S Contemporary Art - Case Studies
All 2000, 3000 and 4000-level Studiowork courses will not be recognised for such purposes.

4. Courses offered by the South African College of Music
No more than four 1000-level courses, four 2000-level courses and two 3000-level courses offered by the South African College of Music may be recognised towards the general BA and BSoScSc degrees.

5. Courses offered by the School of Dance
No more than four 1000-level courses, four 2000-level courses and two 3000-level courses offered by the School of Dance may be recognised towards the general BA and BSoScSc degrees.

6. Courses offered through the School of Education and the Centre for Extra-Mural Studies
These courses will not be recognised as part of the curriculum of the general BA and BSoScSc degrees.

7. Courses offered by the Faculty of Commerce
The following courses will not be recognised as part of the general BA and BSoScSc degrees:
   (a) BUS1010F Thinking about Business I
   (b) BUS1033F Professional Communication
   (c) BUS1034S Professional Communication (Actuarial Science)
   (d) BUS1035S Professional Communication

6.4 Other courses
The curriculum may include a maximum of six semester courses or equivalent offered by departments established in the Faculty of Commerce and by the Department of Commercial Law of the Faculty of Law.

Notes
1. For the purposes of this rule, all courses in Statistical Sciences are regarded as Science courses.
2. This rule does not apply to the 1000-level, 2000-level and 3000-level semester courses comprising the major in Organisational Psychology.
3. This rule does not apply to the 1000-level, 2000-level and 3000-level semester courses offered by the School of Economics.

6.5 Additional study courses towards the BA degree
Additional Study Courses are for the benefit of students who have shown special competence in the subject, and may be taken concurrently with or after the major course in that subject. Before registering for an Additional Study Course a student must have completed all the courses which enable the student to be admitted to the final course. A student may not take more than one Additional Study Course towards the BA degree. Additional Study Courses are counted as senior courses.

FB7 Named programmes leading to the BA and BSoScSc degrees
7.1 The following programmes lead to the BA degree:
   Film and Media Production
   Theatre and Performance
7.2 The following programmes lead to the BSoScSc degree:
   Labour, Organisational Psychology and Human Resource Management
   Philosophy, Politics and Economics
   Social Work
7.3 The curriculum requirements for each named degree programme are published in this Handbook. No deviations from these requirements are permitted except in exceptional circumstances and only with permission of Senate.
Guideline to the taking of courses at other institutions as part of a UCT degree (see rule F18 above)

Under limited circumstances, a concession may be granted to complete a course at another institution (concurrent registration). These circumstances include:

(a) a timetable clash that has occurred as a result of a change made after the student has embarked on study/curriculum;
(b) a course which is not part of the student’s major that has been failed twice before and which cannot be replaced by another elective.

In all cases, the student must obtain permission in advance. In the case of (a) above, consideration will only be given if the course is not offered in Summer Term or Winter Term, or can be taken in another year of full-time study.

In cases where a student has one remaining non-major course to complete the degree requirements and such course has been attempted and failed previously, permission may be given to complete such a course elsewhere to prevent hardship that may arise from having to return especially to complete the sole remaining course. Permission to take a sole remaining course elsewhere must be obtained in advance.
GUIDELINES FOR GENERAL BA AND BSocSc DEGREE PROGRAMMES

- Bachelor of Arts (BA) [HB003]
- Bachelor of Social Science (BSocSc) [HB001]

NOTE: A list of curriculum advisors is available from Humanities Undergraduate Reception, Beattie Building.

Minimum requirements

Below are the minimum requirements for a general degree. Refer to Rule FB6 for complete details.

- Minimum duration: 3 years.
- Minimum number of courses: 20 semester courses (or equivalent).
- Minimum number of senior courses: 10 semester courses (or equivalent).
- Minimum number of majors: 2.
- At least 12 semester courses offered by departments established in the Faculty of Humanities, including the School of Economics.

Recommended curriculum structure

- First year: 8 semester courses
- Second year: 6-8 semester courses
- Third year: 4-6 semester courses

Majors and Degrees

- Choose at least two majors from the lists below.
- At least one must come from a department established in the Faculty of Humanities (including the School of Economics). Majors from departments outside the Faculty of Humanities are listed separately.
- If both majors come from the Bachelor of Arts list, the degree is a BA.
- If both majors come from the Bachelor of Social Science list, the degree is a BSocSc.
- If one major comes from the BA list and one from the BSocSc list, the degree is either a BA or a BSocSc.
- If a major comes from outside the Faculty of Humanities, the degree corresponds to the Humanities major.
**Bachelor of Arts majors**

Afrikaans
Business French
Classical Studies
Dance
Drama
Economic History
English
Film Studies
French
German#  
Hebrew Language and Literature
History
Italian
Linguistics
Jazz Studies
Media and Writing
Music
Spanish
Visual and Art History
Xhosa

# Please consult the Faculty Office

**Bachelor of Social Science majors**

Economics
Gender Studies
Industrial Sociology
Philosophy
Politics
Psychology
Public Policy and Administration
Religious Studies
Social Anthropology
Sociology

**Majors offered by departments outside the Faculty of Humanities**

Applied Statistics
Archaeology
Environmental and Geographical Science
Law
Mathematics
Organisational Psychology
Statistics

For further details on these majors, consult the departmental entries of this Handbook.

Students will not be permitted to offer the following combinations of majors:

**French and Business French**
**History and Economic History**
**Jazz Studies and Music**
**Sociology and Industrial Sociology**
NOTES:
- These programmes are offered to all students registered in the Faculty of Humanities as from 2003. Programmes for degrees commenced before 2003 may be found in the 2003 Faculty of Humanities Undergraduate Handbook, pp 235 - 272.
- Students wishing to register for a general BA or BSocSc degree should refer to Rule FB6 and to the section Guidelines for General BA and BSocSc Degree Programmes.
- Not all courses are offered every year. Check the relevant departmental entries to see which are on offer in 2008.
- Students must make sure that they meet the entrance requirements for all courses in their programmes.

FILM AND MEDIA PRODUCTION [Bachelor of Arts] HB054
Convenor: Associate Professor L Marx (Centre for Film and Media Studies)

Notes for intending Film and Media Production students:
1. The first year of the programme is the same curriculum as the first year of a general bachelor's degree with double majors in Film Studies and Media and Writing. All first-time entering Film and Media Production students register initially for courses equivalent to the majors in Film Studies and Media and Writing. Students are advised to select courses towards another major.
2. Final selection for this programme is made by a panel and only occurs in the second semester of the second year. Only students selected for the production stage of the programme will be admitted to FAM2002S Foundation Production Skills. Entry is competitive and applicants will be judged on the basis of their academic records and portfolios. Candidates may also be interviewed. (Further details about the selection process are available from the Centre for Film and Media Studies.) Students who are not selected for admission to FAM2002S will change their registration to a general bachelor's degree with double majors (for example, in Film Studies and Media and Writing).
3. Students who wish to be considered for selection for the production stage of the programme must apply to the Centre for Film and Media Studies by 23 May of their second year. To be considered for admission, students are required to submit an approved portfolio containing:
   (a) The applicant's academic transcript indicating an average of 65% for the courses completed during the first year of study. Students must have passed at least six semester courses in the immediate previous year of study, including:
       FAM1001F Media and Society
       FAM1000S Analysing Film and TV
       FAM2000F Writing and Editing in the Media
   (b) A letter of motivation
   (c) Examples of creative work
      They must also have passed:
      FAM2004F Introduction to History of Cinema (was HST229F) OR an approved senior ELL or SLL language or literature course
      A workshop is held in the first semester of the second year of study to give students guidance in the submission of their application.
4. The programme must include at least 10 senior semester courses.
First year: 8 semester courses

Note: Students wishing to do an additional major may have to take an appropriate extra semester course in second year.

(a) FAM1000S Analysing Film and TV
(b) FAM1001F Media and Society
(c) Six 1000-level semester courses

Second year: 6 semester courses

Note: Only students selected for the production stage of the programme will be admitted to FAM2002S - see notes above regarding the selection process.

(a) FAM2000F Writing and Editing in the Media
(b) FAM2002S Foundation Production Skills
(c) At least one of the following:
   - FAM2001S Film Narrative
   - FAM2003S Media, Power and Culture
(d) At least one of the following:
   - FAM2004F Introduction to History of Cinema (was HST229F)
   - An approved senior ELL or SLL language or literature course
(e) Any other semester course or courses as required

Third year: 6 semester courses

(a) FAM3002F Production
(b) FAM3004S Senior Research Project
(c) At least two of the following:
   - FAM3000F The Media in South Africa (was ELL319F)
   - FAM3001S Advanced Media Studies (was ELL320S)
   - FAM3003S Advanced Film Studies (was ELL318F)
   - FAM3005F Film in Africa and South Africa
   - HST3005S Film and History
   - HST3006S Photography in South Africa: 1860 to the present
(d) Any other semester course or courses as required to total six for the year, at least one of which must be a senior course if an elective course taken in second year is a 1000-level course

LABOUR, ORGANISATIONAL PSYCHOLOGY AND HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGEMENT

[Bachelor of Social Science] HB049

Convenor: Professor J Maree (Department of Sociology)

The programme must include at least 20 semester courses.

First year: 8 semester courses

(a) BUS1007S Introduction to Organisational Psychology (was BUS132S)
(b) PSY1001W Psychology I
(c) SOC1001F Introduction to Sociology
(d) SOC1005S Individual and Society
(e) One of the following:
   - DOH1002F Language in the Humanities (if required)
   - HST1002F Africa in World History
   - HST1004F The New Millennium in Historical Perspective
   - POL1004F Introduction to Politics
   - POL1005S International Politics
   - SAN1013S Introduction to Social Anthropology of Development and Difference
   - SAN1015F Words, Deeds, Bones and Things (was SAN1014F)
   - SWK1004S Basic Professional Interaction
(f) Two of the following:
ECO1006F Economics for Non-Specialists
HST1005F Making of the Modern World Economy
INF1002S Foundations of Information Systems

Second year: 6-8 semester courses
(a) BUS2014F Organisational Behaviour and Research (was BUS230F)
(b) BUS2015S Organisational Design and Resourcing (was BUS231S)
(c) PSY2003S Social Psychology and Intergroup Relations
(d) One of the following:
PSY2010S Cognition and Neuroscience (was PSY2005S)
PSY2008F Psychopathology
PSY2009F Developmental Psychology (was PSY207F)
(e) At least two of the following:
SOC2015S Comparative Industrial and Labour Studies
SOC2016F Industrialisation and Labour in South Africa
SOC2018S Workers, Trade Unions and Rights
SOC2030F Poverty, Development and Globalisation
(f) Up to two semester courses or one whole-year course from the following:
ACC1006F/S Financial Accounting
ACC1012S Business Accounting
ACC1013F Introduction to Accounting
BUS1004W Introduction to Management
BUS1005F Introduction to Corporate Finance
CML2005F Labour Law
HST2028F 20th Century Industrialisation
HST2031S Southern Africa in the 20th Century
POL2022F State, Management and Administration
POL2037S Public and Development Administration
SAN2015S Anthropology of Power and Wealth

Third year: 4-6 semester courses
(a) BUS3002F Organisational Learning and Wellness (was BUS333F or BUS334F)
(b) BUS3003S Labour Relations and Organisational Change (was BUS335S)
(c) Two courses from one of the following groups:
Group 1
SOC3027F Social Research (Industrial Sociology)
SOC3028S Globalisation, Restructuring and Job Creation (was SOC320S)
Group 2
PSY3004S Clinical and Community Psychology
PSY3005S Critical Psychology
PSY3008F Health Psychology (was PSY306F)
(d) Up to two semester courses or one whole-year course from the list under Second year (f), if these have not been attained in second year
**PHILOSOPHY, POLITICS AND ECONOMICS [Bachelor of Social Science] HB027**

**Convenor:** Associate Professor A Nash (Department of Political Studies)

**Entrance requirements:** 45 Matric points including minimum D for Mathematics (HG) or B (SG).

**First year: 8 semester courses**

(a) ECO1010F  Microeconomics  
(b) ECO1011S  Macroeconomics  
(c) PHI1010S  Ethics  
(d) PHI1024F  Introduction to Philosophy  
(e) POL1004F  Introduction to Politics  
(f) POL1005S  International Politics  
(g) STA1000S  Statistics 1000  
(h) STA1001F  Statistics 1001

**Second year: 8 semester courses**

(a) ECO2003F  Microeconomics II  
(b) ECO2004S  Macroeconomics II  
(c) ECO2007S  Cooperation and Competition  
(d) PHI2012S  Philosophy of Psychology and Mind  
(e) PHI2017F  Logic and Epistemology  
(f) POL2034S  The Political Economy of International Relations  
(g) Two of the following:  
   POL2002S  Political Theory  
   POL2018F  South African Politics II  
   POL2038F  Comparative Politics

**Third year: 5 semester courses**

(a) ECO3025S  Applied International Trade Bargaining  
(b) At least one of the following:  
   PHI3009F  Contemporary Political Philosophy  
   PHI3010S  Language, Thought and Reality  
(c) At least one of the following:  
   POL3029S  Third World Politics  
   POL3030F  Conflict in World Politics  
   SOC3008S  Democracy, Social Change and Development in South Africa  
(d) Two of the following:  
   ECO3020F  Advanced Macro and Microeconomics  
   ECO3021S  Quantitative Methods in Economics  
   PHI3009F  Contemporary Political Philosophy  
   PHI3010S  Language, Thought and Reality  
   POL3029S  Third World Politics  
   POL3030F  Conflict in World Politics  
   POL3032F  Political Analysis  
   SOC3008S  Democracy, Social Change and Development
SOCIAL WORK [Bachelor of Social Science] HB007

Convenor: Mrs S Sturgeon (Department of Social Development)

NOTE: This programme is only offered to students first registered in the programme BEFORE 2007. Students registered from 2007 onwards follow the Bachelor of Social Work curriculum (HB063).

STREAM 1: PSYCHOLOGICAL STUDIES [SW1]

First year: 8 semester courses
(a) REL1011F/S Introduction to Critical Thinking and the Social Sciences
(b) PSY1001W Psychology I
(c) SOC1005S Individual and Society
(d) SWK1004S Basic Professional Interaction
(e) Three semester courses approved by the Department

Second year: 8 semester courses

Entrance requirements: All prescribed 1000-level courses, unless otherwise approved by the Head of the Department of Social Development.
(a) PSY2003S Social Psychology and Intergroup Relations
(b) PSY2009F Developmental Psychology (was PSY207F)
(c) PSY3004S Clinical and Community Psychology
(d) SWK2060F Social Work Assessment
(e) SWK2061F Child/Family Welfare and Substance Abuse
(f) SWK2065S Social Work Intervention
(g) SWK2070F Field Practicum I
(h) SWK2075S Field Practicum II

Third year: 7 semester courses

Entrance requirements: All prescribed 2000- and 3000-level courses, unless otherwise approved by the Head of the Department of Social Development.
(a) PSY3008F Health Psychology (was PSY306F)
(b) SWK3060F Developmental Social Work
(c) SWK3061F Social Work Research
(d) SWK3065S Professional Development and Management
(e) SWK3066S Contemporary Social Work Issues
(f) SWK3070F Field Practicum III
(g) SWK3075S Field Practicum IV

STREAM 2: INDUSTRIAL, ORGANISATIONAL AND LABOUR STUDIES [SW2]

First year: 8 semester courses
(a) PSY1001W Psychology I
(b) REL1011F/S Introduction to Critical Thinking and the Social Sciences
(c) SOC1005S Individual and Society
(d) SWK1004S Basic Professional Interaction
(e) Three semester courses approved by the Department

Second year: 8 semester courses

Entrance requirements: All prescribed 1000-level courses, unless otherwise approved by the Head of the Department of Social Development.
(a) SOC2016F Industrialisation and Labour in South Africa
(b) SOC3028S Globalisation, Restructuring and Job Creation (was SOC320S)
(c) SWK2060F Social Work Assessment
(d) SWK2061F Child/Family Welfare and Substance Abuse
(e) SWK2065S Social Work Intervention
(f) SWK2070F Field Practicum I
(g) SWK2075S Field Practicum II
(h) One of the following:
   SOC2015S Comparative Industrial and Labour Studies
   SOC2018S Workers, Trade Unions and Rights

Third year: 7 semester courses

Entrance requirements: All prescribed 2000- and 3000-level courses, unless otherwise approved by the Head of the Department of Social Development.

(a) SOC3027F Social Research (Industrial Sociology)
(b) SWK3060F Developmental Social Work
(c) SWK3061F Social Work Research
(d) SWK3065S Professional Development and Management
(e) SWK3066S Contemporary Social Work Issues
(f) SWK3070F Field Practicum III
(g) SWK3075S Field Practicum IV

STREAM 3: DEVELOPMENT STUDIES AND SOCIAL TRANSFORMATION [SW3]

First year: 8 semester courses

(a) PSY1001W Psychology I
(b) REL1011F/S Introduction to Critical Thinking and the Social Sciences
(c) SOC1005S Individual and Society
(d) SWK1004S Basic Professional Interaction
(e) Three semester courses approved by the Department

Second year: 8 semester courses

Entrance requirements: All prescribed 1000-level courses, unless otherwise approved by the Head of the Department of Social Development.

(a) SOC2004S Race, Class and Gender
(b) SOC2030F Poverty, Development and Globalisation (was SOC223F)
(c) SOC3028S Globalisation, Restructuring and Job Creation
(d) SWK2060F Social Work Assessment
(e) SWK2061F Child/Family Welfare and Substance Abuse
(f) SWK2065S Social Work Intervention
(g) SWK2070F Field Practicum I
(h) SWK2075S Field Practicum II

Third year: 7 semester courses

Entrance requirements: All prescribed 2000- and 3000-level courses, unless otherwise approved by the Head of the Department of Social Development.

(a) SOC3007F Social Research
(b) SWK3060F Developmental Social Work
(c) SWK3061F Social Work Research
(d) SWK3065S Professional Development and Management
(e) SWK3066S Contemporary Social Work Issues
(f) SWK3070F Field Practicum III
(g) SWK3075S Field Practicum IV
SOCIAL WORK [Bachelor of Social Work] HB063

Convenor: Mrs S Sturgeon (Department of Social Development)

NOTE: Offered from 2007 onwards.

First year: 8 semester courses
(a) PSY1001W Psychology I
(b) SOC1001F Introduction to Sociology
(c) SOC1005S Individual and Society
(d) SWK1004S Basic Professional Interaction
(e) SWK1013S Community Connections
(f) Two of the following:
   ECO1006F Economics for Non-Specialists
   HST1002F Africa in World History
   MAM1014F Quantitative Literacy for Humanities
   REL1002F Religions Past and Present
   SAN1015F Words, Deeds, Bones and Things (was SAN1014F)
   SLL1042F Afrikaans Intensive A
   A first-semester course approved by the Programme Convenor

Second year: 7 semester courses
(a) SWK2001F Introduction to Political Economy and the Foundations of the Social Service Professions
(b) SWK2060F Social Work Assessment
(c) SWK2065S Social Work Intervention
(d) SWK2070F Field Practicum I
(e) SWK2075S Field Practicum II
(f) One of the following:
   PSY2009F Developmental Psychology
   SOC2016F Industrialisation and Labour in South Africa
   SOC2030F Poverty, Development and Globalisation
   A senior first-semester course approved by the Programme Convenor
(g) One of the following:
   PSY2003S Social Psychology and Intergroup Relations
   SOC2004S Race, Class and Gender
   SOC2015S Comparative Industrial and Labour Studies
   A senior second-semester course approved by the Programme Convenor

Third year: 7 semester courses
(a) SWK3001F Political Economy of Social Service Professions
(b) SWK3061F Social Work Research
(c) SWK3066S Contemporary Social Work Issues
(d) SWK3070F Field Practicum III
(e) SWK3075S Field Practicum IV
(f) One of the following:
   PSY3008F Health Psychology
   SOC3007F Social Research
   SOC3027F Social Research (Industrial Sociology)
   A senior first-semester course approved by the Programme Convenor
(g) One of the following:
   PSY3004S Clinical and Community Psychology
   SOC3008S Democracy, Social Change and Development in South Africa
   SOC3028S Globalisation, Restructuring and Job Creation
   A senior second-semester course approved by the Programme Convenor
Fourth year: 6 semester courses
(a) SWK4000F Social Research
(b) SWK4001S Practice Research Project
(c) SWK4030X Contemporary Families in a Changing Society
(d) SWK4031X Psychosocial Functioning and Empowerment
(e) SWK4032X Social Policy and Management
(f) SWK4033X Field Practicum V

For BA (Theatre and Performance) [HB014] and Performer's Diploma in Theatre [HU020], see the Faculty of Humanities Performing and Creative Arts Handbook.
EXTENDED DEGREE PROGRAMME: QUANTITATIVE

Convenor: Mr D Nunez (Department of Psychology)

This is a four-year curriculum for students selected on the basis of tested potential and educational background who do not qualify for entry into Psychology or Economics courses required for Humanities degrees but who have an aptitude for such courses. Successful completion of the appropriate courses enables students to major in Psychology or Economics or to be admitted to the Philosophy, Politics and Economics programme.

The extended degree programme caters for three curricula:

- Economics major [HB055]
- Psychology major [HB055]
- Philosophy, Politics and Economics programme [HB056]

ECONOMICS MAJOR [HB055]

First year: 7 semester courses*

(a) DOH1002F Language in the Humanities
(b) ECO1010H Microeconomics
(c) MAM1014F Quantitative Literacy for Humanities
(d) MAM1015S Introductory Mathematics for Quantitative Social Sciences
(e) REL1012F/S Thinking in the Social Sciences
(f) One of the following:
   HST1004F New Millennium in Historical Perspective
   HST1005F Making of the Modern World Economy
   PHI1024F Introduction to Philosophy
   POL1004F Introduction to Politics
   SAN1015F Words, Deeds, Bones and Things (was SAN1014F)
   SOC1001F Introduction to Sociology
   Another first semester course approved by the programme convenor

(g) One of the following:
   BUS1007S Introduction to Organisational Psychology (was BUS132S)
   HST1008S Peoples, Politics and Place
   PHI1010S Ethics
   SAN1013S Introduction to Social Anthropology
   SOC1005S Individual and Society
   Another second semester course approved by the programme convenor

* Students who do well in their first semester courses may be permitted by the programme convenor to register for another second semester course, making a total of 8 semester courses in first year. Students who obtain less than 50% for one or more of their first year first semester courses will be required to attend a mandatory academic counselling session with the programme convenor.

Second year: 6 semester courses

(a) ECO1011F Macroeconomics
(b) ECO2008S Development Economics (was ECO205S)
   or
   ECO2007S Cooperation and Competition
(c) STA1001H Statistics 1001
(d) At least two 2000-level senior semester courses from second Humanities major chosen at first year
(e) One Humanities semester course, unless the second Humanities major requires more than two 2000-level senior semester courses
Third year: 6 semester courses
(a) ECO2003F  Microeconomics II
(b) ECO2004S  Macroeconomics II
(c) STA1000S  Statistics 1000
(d) At least two 3000-level senior courses from second Humanities major chosen at second year
(e) One Humanities semester course, unless the second Humanities major requires more than two 3000-level senior semester courses

Fourth year: 4 semester courses
(a) ECO3020F  Advanced Macro and Microeconomics
(b) At least two of the following:
    ECO3009F  Natural Resource Economics
    ECO3021S  Quantitative Methods in Economics
    ECO3022S  Advanced Labour Economics
    ECO3024S  International Trade and Finance
    ECO3025S  Applied International Trade Bargaining
(c) One Humanities semester course

PSYCHOLOGY MAJOR [HB055]

First year: 6 semester courses*
(a) DOH1002F  Language in the Humanities
(b) MAM1014F  Quantitative Literacy for Humanities
(c) MAM1016S  Quantitative Literacy for Social Science
(d) PSY1003W  Psychology Foundation
(e) REL1013H  Thinking in the Social Sciences (Extended Curriculum)
* Students who do well in their first semester courses may be permitted by the programme convenor to register for another second semester course, making a total of 7 semester courses in first year. Students who obtain less than 50% for one or more of their first year first semester courses will be required to attend a mandatory academic counselling session with the programme convenor.

Second year: 6 semester courses
(a) PSY2006F  Research in Psychology I
(b) At least two of the following:
    PSY2003S  Social Psychology and Intergroup Relations
    PSY2008F  Psychopathology
    PSY2009F  Developmental Psychology
    PSY2010S  Cognition and Neuroscience (was PSY2005S)
(c) Two 1000-level courses, including those required for second Humanities major
(d) One elective course (1000-level)

Third year: 4 semester courses
(a) PSY3007S  Research in Psychology II
(b) Two 2000-level senior courses from second Humanities major chosen at second year
(c) At least one of the following:
    PSY3004S  Clinical and Community Psychology
    PSY3005S  Critical Psychology
    PSY3008F  Health Psychology
    PSY3009F  Applied Cognitive Science
    PSY3010S  Introduction to Clinical Neuropsychology

Fourth year: 4 semester courses
(a) At least one of the following:
    PSY3004S  Clinical and Community Psychology
EXTENDED DEGREE PROGRAMME: QUANTITATIVE

PSY3005S  Critical Psychology
PSY3008F  Health Psychology
PSY3009F  Applied Cognitive Science
PSY3010S  Introduction to Clinical Neuropsychology

(b) Two 3000-level senior courses from second Humanities major chosen at second year
(c) One elective course (1000- or 2000-level)

PHILOSOPHY, POLITICS AND ECONOMICS PROGRAMME [HB056]

First year: 7 semester courses*
(a) DOH1002F  Language in the Humanities
(b) ECO1010H  Microeconomics
(c) MAM1014F  Quantitative Literacy for Humanities
(d) MAM1015S  Introductory Mathematics for Quantitative Social Sciences
(e) POL1004F  Introduction to Politics
(f) POL1005S  International Politics
(g) REL1012F/S  Thinking in the Social Sciences

* Students who do well in their first semester courses may be permitted by the programme convenor to register for another second semester course, making a total of 8 semester courses in first year. Students who obtain less than 50% for one or more of their first year first semester courses will be required to attend a mandatory academic counselling session with the programme convenor.

Second year: 7 semester courses
(a) ECO1011F  Macroeconomics
(b) ECO2007S  Cooperation and Competition
(c) PHI1010S  Ethics
(d) PHI1024F  Introduction to Philosophy
(e) PHI2012S  Philosophy of Psychology and Mind
(f) STA1001H  Statistics 1001
(g) One of the following:
    POL2002S  Political Theory
    POL2018F  South African Politics II
    POL2038F  Comparative Politics

Third year: 6 semester courses
(a) ECO2003F  Microeconomics II
(b) ECO2004S  Macroeconomics II
(c) PHI2017F  Logic and Epistemology
(d) POL2034S  The Political Economy of International Relations
(e) STA1000F/S  Statistics 1000
(f) One of the following:
    POL2002S  Political Theory
    POL2018F  South African Politics II
    POL2038F  Comparative Politics

Fourth year: 5 semester courses
(a) ECO3025S  Applied International Trade Bargaining
(b) At least one of the following:
    PHI3009F  Contemporary Political Philosophy
    PHI3100S  Language, Thought and Reality
(c) At least one of the following:
    POL3029S  Third World Politics
    POL3030F  Conflict in World Politics
    SOC3008S  Democracy, Social Change and Development
(d) Two of the following:
- ECO3020F: Advanced Macro and Microeconomics
- ECO3021S: Quantitative Methods in Economics
- PHI3009F: Contemporary Political Philosophy
- PHI3010S: Language, Thought and Reality
- POL3029S: Third World Politics
- POL3030F: Conflict in World Politics
- POL3032F: Political Analysis
- SOC3008S: Democracy, Social Change and Development
EXTENDED DEGREE PROGRAMME: NON-QUANTITATIVE

Convenor: Dr P Anderson (Department of English Language and Literature)

This is a four-year curriculum for students selected on the basis of tested potential and educational background who show the potential to succeed in a four-year extended degree programme with special support. Students will be given guidance and academic support throughout the programme through special tutorial/workshop facilities and regular consultation with an Academic Advisor. The extended degree programme caters for two degree curricula, which are chosen according to which majors are selected (see Majors below):

- Bachelor of Arts (BA) [HB061]
- Bachelor of Social Science (BSocSc) [HB062]

NOTE: Students in this programme may not take majors in Psychology or Economics or the Philosophy, Politics and Economics programme.

Majors

Students are required to choose two majors selected from the lists included in the section Guidelines for General BA and BSocSc Degree Programmes. Students who select both majors from the list of Bachelor of Arts majors will register for a Bachelor of Arts degree. Students who select both majors from the list of Bachelor of Social Science majors will register for a Bachelor of Social Science degree. Students who select one major from each list will choose to register for either a Bachelor of Arts degree or a Bachelor of Social Science degree. Students who select a major from departments outside the Faculty will register for the Bachelor's degree of the Humanities Faculty major. Students may take only one major offered by departments not established in the Faculty of Humanities.

First year: 6 semester courses*
(a) DOH1002F Language in the Humanities
(b) One of the following:
   ELL1017H Foundations in English Literary Studies
   FAM1002H Foundations in Media Studies
(c) REL1013H Thinking in the Social Sciences (Extended Curriculum)
(d) Three semester courses, of which at least two form parts of a major or majors offered by departments established in the Faculty of Humanities

* Additional course(s) may be taken subject to the approval of the Academic Advisor.

Second year: 6 semester courses, including
(a) At least two semester courses at 2000-level that form part of a BA/BSocSc major
(b) All outstanding 1000-level courses required for the completion of at least two majors for the BA/BSocSc degree

Third year:
At least four senior semester courses recognised for the BA/BSocSc degree

Fourth year:
All courses required for the completion of the BA/BSocSc degree

Students who pass all courses in the first year with good results may, on the recommendation of their Academic Advisor, take courses in their second and third years to enable them to graduate in three years.
Academic Development Programme

The Department is housed in the Centre for Higher Education Development, Hlanganani Building, in North Lane.
The Department can be contacted by email at janine.peters@uct.ac.za.

DOH1002F  LANGUAGE IN THE HUMANITIES
First-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor Rochelle Kapp.
Entrance requirements: Admission to this course is restricted to Humanities students selected on the basis of a language proficiency test.
Course outline:
Reading and writing practices in the academic environment are different from those encountered at most schools. In response to this, and the particular difficulties experienced by students for whom English is an additional language, this course provides a general orientation to language and learning practices and key concepts in the Humanities. It emphasises critical reading and argument construction in essay writing, and lecture note-taking strategies. Classes are based on discussion in small groups and intensive writing activities on selected debates in the Humanities.
Assessment:
Coursework counts 60%; one two-hour compulsory examination in June counts 40%.
NOTE: Based on their performance, students may be advised by the convenor to change their registration to DOH1002H, an identical course spread over a longer period.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures and tutorials, and 100% completion of assignments.

DOH1004S  ACADEMIC LITERACY IN THE HUMANITIES
First-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week. (A pass in DOH1004S may be counted for credit purposes in place of DOH1002F.)
Convenor: Associate Professor Rochelle Kapp.
Entrance requirements:
(a) Except by permission of the Dean, a student who has failed DOH1002F is required to register for DOH1004S.
(b) English-additional-language students who are exempted from registering for DOH1002F on the basis of their result in the PTEEP test, or their school result for English, may register for DOH1004S if they have failed two or more courses in their first semester of study.
(c) Students registered for the Extended Degree programmes (Quantitative and Non-Quantitative) may also register on the recommendation of their programme convenor, in consultation with Language Development staff in the Academic Development Programme, CHED.
(d) Students transferring from another faculty may be required to register for DOH1004S.
Course outline: As for DOH1002F.
Assessment:
Coursework counts 60%; one two-hour compulsory examination in October/November counts 40%.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures and tutorials, and completion of all assignments.
The Centre is housed in the Centre for Higher Education Development, Hoerikwaggo Building, in North Lane. The Third Term Office can be contacted by email at Mark.Abrahams@uct.ac.za

A number of courses offered by departments established in the Faculty of Humanities are also offered in Summer Term (November - December and January - February) or Winter Term (June - July). Descriptions of these courses can be found under the departmental entries later in this Handbook. Further courses may be added - please consult the Centre for Open Learning.

Summer Term courses:

J January - February  
P November - December  
U November - January

Winter Term courses:

L June - July

The following courses MAY be offered in Summer Term 2007/2008 or Winter Term 2008:

- **ELL1013P** English Literary Studies
- **ELL1032P** Introduction to Language Studies
- **ELL1033J** Introduction to Applied Language Studies
- **FAM1000P** Analysing Film and TV
- **FAM1001J** Media and Society
- **FAM2002J** Foundation Production Skills
- **FAM2006L** Producing Documentary Television
- **HST1002P** Africa in World History
- **PHI1010J** Ethics
- **PHI1024P** Introduction to Philosophy
- **PHI2012P** Philosophy of Psychology and Mind
- **PHI2017P** Logic and Epistemology
- **POL1004J** Introduction to Politics
- **SLL1002P** Word Power
- **SOC1005J** Individual and Society
- **SOC2004P** Race, Class and Gender
- **SOC2016L** Industrialisation and Labour in SA
- **SOC2016P** Industrialisation and Labour in SA
- **SOC2030P** Poverty, Development and Globalisation
DEPARTMENTS AND COURSES OFFERED

For full entries for departments and courses offered in Performing and Creative Arts (Dance, Drama, Fine Art and Music), see the Faculty of Humanities Performing and Creative Arts Handbook.

ACCOUNTING
(Faculty of Commerce)

ACC1006F/S  FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING
First-year, first- or second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 double tutorial per week.
Convenors: Ms J Kew and Ms J Taylor.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
The nature of business and various business decisions, the flow of documentation in business, the nature and context of Accounting, the Accounting framework, recording business transactions, reporting financial information, preparing and interpreting financial statements.
DP requirements:
Attendance at and submission of a minimum of 80% of tutorials AND weighted average of at least 40% for class tests AND satisfactory completion of project. Students who do not obtain a minimum of 50% in class tests will not automatically be granted a deferred exam on application.
Assessment:
Tests and project 35%; final 3-hour examination 65%.

ACC1011S  FINANCIAL REPORTING 1
First-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 double tutorial per week.
Convenor: Ms J Kew.
Entrance requirements: Minimum 40% final mark for ACC1006F/S Financial Accounting.
Course outline:
Non-current assets; financial analysis; cash flow statements; companies; incomplete records; non-profit organisations; close corporations; partnerships; reconciliations; accounting framework; reading financial statements.
DP requirements:
Attendance at and submission of a minimum of 80% of tutorials AND weighted average of at least 40% for class test(s); AND project(s) satisfactorily completed. Students who do not obtain a minimum of 50% in class tests will not automatically be granted a deferred exam on application.
Assessment:
Project and test(s) 35%; final 3-hour examination 65%.
NOTE: Students require an overall average of 60% for Financial Reporting 1 to proceed to Financial Reporting 2 (ACC2012W).

ACC1012S  BUSINESS ACCOUNTING
This course is a terminating course and does not lead to a 2000-level course.
First-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 double tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr E Chamisa.
Entrance requirements: A minimum 40% final mark for ACC1006F/S Financial Accounting.
Objective: To provide students with an overview of published financial statements, analysis and
interpretation of financial information, and an introduction to management accounting and taxation.

Course outline:
Analysis and interpretation of financial information; company financial statements; costing; budgeting and taxation.

DP requirements:
A weighted average of 40% for class tests and satisfactory performance on the project and attendance at and submission of a minimum of 80% of tutorial assignments. Students who do not obtain a minimum of 50% in class tests will not automatically be granted a deferred exam on application.

Assessment:
Test(s)/project(s) 40%; final 3-hour examination 60%.

For second-year and subsequent courses, please refer to the Faculty of Commerce Handbook.
The African Gender Institute is situated in All Africa House, on UCT's Middle Campus.

**Associate Professor and Head of Department:**
J Bennett, BA(Hons) Natal MA (Linguistics) EdD (Applied Linguistics) Columbia

**Professor and Chair of Gender Studies:**
A Mama, BSc(Hons) St Andrews MSc (Social Psychology) PhD (Applied Psychology) Lond

**Undergraduate Programme Convenor:**
E Salo, BSocSc(Hons) Cape Town MA (International Dev) Clark PhD (Anthropology) Emory

**Information Technology Officer:**
F Jadwat

**Office Manager:**
M Collison

**Academic Programme Administrator:**
W Daniels, BSocSc Cape Town

**Project Administrators:**
H Ferguson
K Flowers

The African Gender Institute runs teaching, research and development programmes in the broad area of gender and transformation. In working to develop knowledge and strategies for the advancement of gender equity and democracy, the African Gender Institute builds links between scholars, researchers and practitioners across the African continent.


**Requirements for a major in Gender Studies (GEN):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGI2000F Understanding Gender</td>
<td>AGI2001S Gender and Development or HST2035S Gender and History*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGI3000F Theories, Politics and Action</td>
<td>AGI3001S Politics of Gendered Knowledge</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See entry under Department of Historical Studies

**Prerequisites:**

(i) For AGI2000F: at least 6 courses at the 1000 level
(ii) For AGI2001S: AGI2000F or second-year status
(iii) For HST2035S: AGI2000F
(iv) For AGI3000F: AGI2000F, AGI2001S or HST2035S
(v) For AGI3001S: AGI2000F, AGI2001S or HST2035S, AGI3000F
NOTES:
Students who have taken AGI2001S are not excluded from taking HST2035S as an elective, and vice versa.
Students majoring in HIS and GEN should note that HST2035S counts as an elective in the HIS major, not as a core HST course.

Course outlines:

**AGI2000F UNDERSTANDING GENDER**
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 contact periods a week.
**Convenor:** Associate Professor J Bennett.
**Entrance requirements:** Students who have completed at least 3 full courses (or the equivalent) at the 1000 level are automatically admitted.
**Course outline:**
The aims of this course include increasing students' awareness of the relevance of gender issues to their lives and developing a critical understanding of the multiple and contested meanings of gender in contemporary African and international contexts. It introduces key concepts such as sex, sexuality, gender, identity and culture and explores interconnections between gendered dynamics, 'race', class, generation and location. Topics offered may also include case studies on representations of gender in popular culture, gender based violence, HIV/AIDS and political issues in the South African context. A variety of academic and professional arenas will be presented to show different ways of working with gender.
**DP requirements:**
Students are expected to attend classes regularly and to submit all required assignments by deadlines identified in the course curriculum.
**Assessment:**
One two-hour examination in June counts for 40%; classwork counts for 60%.

**AGI2001S GENDER AND DEVELOPMENT**
Second-year, second-semester course, 4 contact periods a week.
**Convenor:** Dr E Salo.
**Entrance requirements:** AGI2000F if in Gender Studies major; second-year status if in other majors or programmes.
**Course outline:**
The aim of this course is to enable students to understand and analyse the impact of development practices, particularly as they have affected women and men in different contexts. The course will offer an introduction to debates around the gendered impact of different economic and political development trajectories, and policies, such as industrialization, agricultural transformations, democratisation, and contemporary structural adjustment programmes. Case studies drawn from different regions and contexts will be used to illustrate the theoretical debates, including those distinguishing "women in development" approaches from "gender and development" approaches.
**DP requirements:**
Completion of all semester coursework by deadlines as specified on course curriculum.
**Assessment:**
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 40%; classwork counts for 60% of the final mark.

**AGI3000F THEORIES, POLITICS AND ACTION**
Third-year, first-semester seminar-based course, 4 lectures a week.
**Convenor:** Dr E Salo.
**Entrance requirements:** AGI2000F, AGI2001S or HST2035S, or permission of the course
Course outline:
In this course we will examine how women's movements have emerged in the context of struggles against other forms of social injustice and have informed theories about gendered oppression. Focussing on women's and feminist movements mainly in the South and East, the course examines how feminist theories have not only been shaped by the specificities of the local contexts and struggles; but also how they have been shaped by the global flow of information about women's and queer movements elsewhere. In addition, we examine how the questions that feminists and women activists have raised have destabilised the taken-for-granted assumptions about masculinities. We will also take a brief look at the construction and multiple meanings of sexuality and masculinities, especially in African contexts. The course is designed to acquaint students with literature about women's and feminist movements in the non-western world. It encourages students to think critically about the relationship between theories and practice, as well as about the applicability of feminist theoretical concepts across diverse contexts. Coursework is also designed to develop students' writing and seminar presentation skills.

DP requirements:
Completion of all written coursework by deadlines as specified on course curriculum.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in June counts for 40%; classwork counts for 60% of the final mark.

AGI3001S  THE POLITICS OF GENDERED KNOWLEDGE
Third-year, second-semester, research-based seminar course, 4/5 lectures a week.

Convenor: Associate Professor J Bennett.

Entrance requirements: Third-year status in Gender Studies Major, AGI3000F. This course is not available as an elective in any other major.

Course outline:
The course offers senior students an opportunity to develop gender-sensitive research methodology skills through study and by designing and undertaking research. It also explores some of the key challenges of engendering knowledge, feminist perspectives on research and a range of questions - political, theoretical and methodological - pertinent to African feminists and African-based researchers in the social sciences. The course involves a high level of participation, group work and co-operation, linking course discussion and readings in a specially designed research process to enable students to engage in doing research.

DP requirements:
Completion of all semester coursework and research assignments by deadlines as specified within the course curriculum.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 30%; research assignments count for 70% of the course mark.
CENTRE FOR AFRICAN STUDIES

The Centre for African Studies is housed in the Harry Oppenheimer Institute Building, located on Engineering Mall.
The letter code for the Department is CAS.
The Department can be contacted by email at cas-africas@uct.ac.za.

Professor and Director:
B Cooper, MA Birmingham PhD Sussex

Associate Professor:
H O Garuba, MA PhD Ibadan

Senior Lecturer:
N Shepherd, PhD Cape Town

Administrative Manager:
L Jacobs

Senior Secretary:
L Diedricks

Course outline:

CAS1001S  AFRICA: CULTURE, IDENTITY AND GLOBALISATION
First-year, second-semester course, one lecture and one tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr N Shepherd.
Entrance requirements: This is for non-Humanities students only.
Course outline:
This is a service course designed specifically for non-Humanities students preparing themselves for life of professional practice. Broad-based and introductory, it is intended to satisfy the Complimentary Studies requirements of professional institutes (like the Engineering Council of South Africa). It does this by focussing on contexts and ideas which will be of direct benefit in professional practice, as well as on more abstract ideas which are generally enriching. The course takes a case-study approach, sampling a range of materials as a way of introducing students to some of the key words and concepts in Humanities-type study. Throughout, the emphasis is in finding readily accessible points of entry into sometimes complex issues and discourses, as well as providing "tools to think with": conceptual tools and an associated critical vocabulary which cut to the heart of contemporary contexts.
DP requirements:
Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.
Assessment:
Coursework counts 50%; final 2-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

CAS2001S  CULTURE, IDENTITY AND GLOBALISATION IN AFRICA
Second-year, second-semester course, three lectures and one tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr N Shepherd.
Entrance requirements: Students must be in their second or subsequent year of study.
Course outline:
“Thinking Africa Differently”. We have all grown used to a particular way of thinking and writing about Africa: a set of images, tropes and ideas; a particular language; a particular version of Africa’s place (or lack of place) in history; a particular version of Africa’s participation (or lack of participation) in the major movements and phenomena of our time. It is probably fair to describe this as a ‘dominant discourse’ in the sense that it is constitutive of many of the ideas and images of Africa that circulate in everyday life. We ask the question - which is also a challenge - what it would mean to escape this dominant structure of ideas, to ‘think Africa differently’. This is a question with both theoretical and methodological implications. On the one hand, we need a set of strategies and approaches to evade and outwit this dominant discourse. On the other hand, we need a set of guiding ideas, concepts, and the resources of a critical intellectual tradition. In this course we will take a two stage approach, with the aim of drawing together theory and methodology. In the first place, we identify the elements of the dominant discourse as they appear in a set of historical and contemporary phenomena, readings, case studies. In the second place, we propose a set of strategies for countering this discourse, and look at alternative and oppositional forms, traditions, and practices that have emerged and are emerging.

DP requirements:
Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

Assessment:
Coursework counts 45%; one 2-hour examination counts 55% of the final mark.
The Department is housed in the Beattie Building, located on University Avenue. The letter code for the Department is AGE. The Department can be contacted by email at lynn.cable@uct.ac.za.

Requirements for a major in Archaeology (AGE):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Second year</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AGE2012F Southern African Hunters and Herders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGE2011S Human Evolution</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Third year</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AGE3013H Archaeology in Practice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONE of the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGE3011F The Roots of Black Identity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGE3012S Global Interaction and the Transformation of South African Society</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:

(i) For AGE2012F: any first-year Science course; or any one of SAN1014F or AGE1002S or equivalent first-year semesters; or AGE2011S; or any first-year Humanities course from cognate disciplines such as Social Anthropology, Historical Studies, Sociology; or by permission of the Head of Department

(ii) For AGE2011S: AGE1002S or SAN1014F; or any first-year Science course; or any first-year Humanities course from cognate disciplines such as Social Anthropology, Historical Studies, Sociology; or by permission of the Head of Department

(iii) For AGE3013H: AGE2012F and AGE2011S, or by permission of the Head of Department

(iv) For AGE3011F and AGE3012S: AGE2011S or AGE2012F, or by permission of the Head of Department

NOTE:
Lectures are usually given four times a week, but the fifth day may also be used and should therefore be kept free.

Course outlines:

SAN1015F  WORDS, DEEDS, BONES AND THINGS (was SAN1014F)
First-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr S Levine.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
How might one explain the beginnings of our species and diversity of human social, cultural and linguistic forms that have arisen as humans have developed into and now live as modern people? The course compares approaches taken by archaeologists, linguists and social-cultural anthropologists in their attempts to answer such questions. We delve into what lies behind the many ways people interact, communicate and use the material resources around them. Using examples from a wide variety of social, cultural, linguistic and ecological contexts, we address debates about the idea of human evolution; about the relation between nature and nurture and its links with concepts such as race, gender and kinship; and about the social-cultural underpinnings of language use and linguistic variations. A core theme is to understand and recognise the limitations of a cultural relativist approach. A core goal is to introduce students to critical academic skills that enable us to understand the bases on which new knowledge is developed and thereby to recognise how provisional knowledge is.
**DP requirements:** Attendance at tutorials and submission of all written work, plus class test.

**Assessment:**
- Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 50%
- One two-hour examination counts 50%, provided a sub-minimum mark of 50% is attained for the examination and that at least half the examination questions required to be answered have been awarded marks of 50% or more.

**Re-examination:** Students will be entitled to re-examination in the period directly after the examination if they have attained a raw overall aggregate of at least 50% for the course but have failed to meet the sub-minimum requirement for the examination and have achieved at least 48% for the examination.

---

**AGE1002S**  **AFRICA AND WORLD ARCHAEOLOGY**

First-year, second-semester course.

**Convenor:** Dr D Braun.

**Entrance requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**
An overview of the human past from the perspective of Africa. The course will provide an introduction to human origins and the origin of the archaeological record in Africa, the expansion of the human population from Africa, a comparative perspective on hunter-gatherers, the development of farming and the origins of complex societies, and the contact between Africa, Asia and Europe in the colonial period.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at tutorials and completion of assignments.

**Assessment:**
Assignments and class tests count 50% towards the final mark and one 3-hour examination written in November counts 50%.

---

**AGE2011S**  **HUMAN EVOLUTION**

Second-year, second-semester course.

**Convenor:** Dr R Ackermann.

**Entrance requirements:** AGE1002S or SAN1014F; or any first-year Science course; or any first-year Humanities course from cognate disciplines such as Social Anthropology, Historical Studies, Sociology; or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**
Human evolution and the archaeological evidence for the development of human culture in the late Pliocene and Pleistocene. The evidence for human evolution is explored, from the origins of the hominids to the emergence of modern humans, along with the congruent archaeological traces.

**DP requirements:** Completion of assignments and attendance at practicals.

**Assessment:**
Assignments and class tests count 50% towards the final mark and one 3-hour examination written in November counts 50%.

---

**AGE2012F**  **SOUTHERN AFRICAN HUNTERS AND HERDERS**

Second-year, first-semester course.

**Convenor:** Professor J C Sealy.

**Entrance requirements:** Any first-year Science course; or any one of SAN1014F or AGE1002S or equivalent first-year semesters; or AGE2011S; or any first-year Humanities course from cognate disciplines such as Social Anthropology, Historical Studies, Sociology; or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**
Humans have been hunter-gatherers for 99% of their evolutionary history, which means that our physical, psychological and social selves have been shaped by this way of life. Southern African
Khoisan hunter-gatherers and herders have contributed significantly to our understanding of such societies. In this course, we focus on hunting and gathering as a way of life in Southern Africa from some 20 000 years ago to the twentieth century, concluding by considering the contemporary socio-political environment in which many South Africans are (re-)connecting to a Khoisan identity. The course will include coverage of rock art and its significance, as well as other material culture, biology, linguistics and economic and environmental issues.

**DP requirements:**
Attendance at practicals, completion of assignments and participation in one-day field trip.

**Assessment:**
Assignments and class tests count 50% towards the final mark and one 3-hour examination written in June counts 50%.

---

**AGE3006H  DIRECTED READING AND RESEARCH**
Third-year, half-course.

**Convenor:** Professor J C Sealy.

**Entrance requirements:** For students specialising in Archaeology, strictly with permission of the Head of Department only.

**Course outline:**
A flexible intensive study course in a specific area customised to the needs of individual students.

**Assessment:**
Essays and tests count 20%; a long paper counts 40%; one 3-hour examination written in November counts 40%.

---

**AGE3011F  THE ROOTS OF BLACK IDENTITY**
Third-year, first-semester course.

**Convenor:** Dr S Chirikure.

**Entrance requirements:** AGE2011S or AGE2012F, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**
In AGE3011F we explore the history of southern Africa's people over the past 2 000 years. Why are southern African populations so diverse? What lies behind the linguistic map of modern South Africa? What are the links between human biology, culture and language? We use the archaeological record of artefacts, settlement systems, food waste, environmental contexts and human skeletons to look at population movement, assimilation, conflict, co-operation and domination. We explain the origins of current demographic patterns, problematise the notion of 'settler' and explore the rich and diverse heritage of the making of South Africa.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at practicals, completion of assignments.

**Assessment:**
Assignments and class tests count 50% towards the final mark and one 3-hour examination written in June counts 50%.

---

**AGE3012S  GLOBAL INTERACTION AND THE TRANSFORMATION OF SOUTHERN AFRICAN SOCIETY**
Third-year, second-semester course.

**Convenor:** Dr S Hall.

**Entrance requirements:** AGE2012F or AGE2011S, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**
Over the last thousand years, trade, population movements and exploratory settlement led to massive impacts on indigenous economies in southern Africa. In AGE3012S we look at these transformations from both foreign and local viewpoints. The archaeological record of Indian and Atlantic Ocean expansions record events of great significance and drama, including the process of colonisation, slavery, genocide and eventually apartheid. Material culture, historic written records
and excavated artefacts all inform our understanding of these events, many of them the major determinants of current conflicts and differences. We trace the history of interactions, the roots of inequalities and the course of differentiation through the archaeological record.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at practicals, completion of assignments.

**Assessment:**
Assignments and class tests count 50% towards the final mark and one 3-hour examination written in November counts 50%.

---

**AGE3013H**  ARCHAEOLOGY IN PRACTICE

Third-year, half-course.

**Convenor:** Professor J E Parkington.

**Entrance requirements:** AGE2012F and AGE2011S, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**
Field training in site location, excavation, field note-taking, stratigraphic observation, site survey, use of GPS and total station, photography, rock art recording, processing of field observations, spreadsheet use, preliminary conservation and accessioning of materials.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at field school and completion of assignments.

**Assessment:**
Assignments and class tests count 50% towards the final mark and one 3-hour examination counts 50%.
COMMERCIAL LAW
(Faculty of Law)

Course outlines:

CML1001F BUSINESS LAW I - FIRST SEMESTER
CML1004S BUSINESS LAW I - SECOND SEMESTER
First-year, first- or second-semester half-course, 5 lectures per week.
Business Law I has one general course code (CML1001F) for the first semester course and one general course code (CML1004S) for the second semester. However, the students are allocated to different groups on registration and to distinguish each group a number is added to the general course code.
Although the syllabus is the same for all groups, different tests and examinations are set for each group. Students in one group are not permitted to attend another group's lectures.
Convenor: To be advised.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
Introduction to law, general principles of contract; sale; lease; credit agreements, agency.
DP requirements:
Students must write both tests and obtain an average for the two of at least 40%. More detail will be included in the course reader.
Assessment:
Two tests: Test 1 counts 20%, Test 2 counts 30%; one 2-hour 15-minute examination counts 50% of the final mark.

CML2001F COMPANY LAW - FIRST SEMESTER
Second- and third-year, first-semester half-course, 5 lectures per week.
Company Law has one general course code (CML2001F) for the first semester. However, the students are allocated to different groups on registration and to distinguish each group a number is added to the general course code.
Although the syllabus is the same for all groups, different tests and examinations are set for each group. Students in one group are not permitted to attend another group's lectures.
Convenor: C Rademeyer.
Entrance requirements: Business Law I.
Course outline:
The common law and statutory provisions relating to the nature, formation and management of partnerships, trusts, companies and close corporations.
DP requirements:
Students must write both tests and obtain an average for the two of at least 40%. More detail will be included in the course reader.
Assessment:
Two tests: Test 1 counts 20%, Test 2 counts 30%; one 2-hour 15-minute examination in June counts 50% of the final mark.

CML2005F LABOUR LAW - FIRST SEMESTER
Second-year, first-semester half course, 5 lectures per week.
Convenor: G Giles.
Entrance requirements: No undergraduate student in his/her first year of study may take Labour
Law. It is recommended that students have passed a foundation course in law eg Business Law I.

**Course outline:**

**DP requirements:**
Students must write both tests and obtain an average for the two of at least 40%. More detail will be included in the course reader.

**Assessment:**
Two tests: Test 1 counts 20%, Test 2 counts 30%; one 2-hour 15-minute examination in June counts 50% of the final mark.

---

**CML2010S BUSINESS LAW II - SECOND SEMESTER**

Second-year, second-semester half-course, 5 lectures per week.

*Business Law II has one general course code (CML2010S) for the second semester. However, the students are allocated to different groups on registration and to distinguish each group a number is added to the general course code.*

*Although the syllabus is the same for all groups, different tests and examinations are set for each group. Students in one group are not permitted to attend another group’s lectures.*

**Convenor:** To be advised.

**Entrance requirements:** Business Law I. (With the exception of graduate students studying towards the BCom Accountants’ Conversion Course, no undergraduate student in his/her first year of study may register for Business Law II.)

**Course outline:**
Negotiable Instruments and other forms of payment; insurance, insolvency, secured transactions and intellectual property law.

**DP requirements:**
Students must write both tests and obtain an average for the two of at least 40%. More detail will be included in the course reader.

**Assessment:**
Two tests: Test 1 counts 20%, Test 2 counts 30%; one 2-hour 15-minute examination in November counts 50% of the final mark.
DANCE

The School of Dance is located in Woolsack Drive, Rosebank (Lower Campus) and can be contacted by email at angie.pearson@uct.ac.za.

For the major offered by the School of Dance, please refer to page 168 of the S A College of Music entry in this Handbook.
The Department of Drama is housed in the Rosedale Building, located on the Hiddingh Campus. The letter code for the Department is DRM. The Department can be contacted by email at: drama@uct.ac.za

The Little Theatre is the production house of the Drama Department. The Little Theatre is located on the Hiddingh Campus, and its office is housed there in the Speech and Drama Building. The letter code for the Little Theatre is LIT. The Little Theatre can be contacted by email at: susan.cole@uct.ac.za.

**Associate Professor and Head of Department:**
Mark Fleishman, BA Performer's Diploma in Speech and Drama MA Cape Town

**Associate Professor and Director of the Little Theatre:**
Christopher B Weare, BA(Hons) UED Rhodes

**Associate Professors:**
Gay Morris, BA Postgraduate Specialist Teacher's Diploma Speech and Drama Cape Town ADB Lond MA Cape Town
Jay Pather, ATCL BA(Hons) Durban-Westville MA NYU

**Senior Lecturers:**
Yvonne Banning, LTCL BA(Hons) UED Natal MA Witwatersrand
Geoffrey Hyland, BA UOVS HDE BA(Hons) Cape Town MFA York
Elizabeth Mills, BA Specialist Actor's Diploma Speech and Drama, Specialist Teacher's Diploma Speech and Drama Cape Town MA Rhodes

**Lecturers:**
Mandla Mbothwe, Performer's Diploma in Theatre BA(Hons) Cape Town
Sebata Sesiu, CTD Lamda MA Leeds
Jacqui Singer, BA Performer's Diploma in Speech and Drama Cape Town

**Administrative Assistant:**
Robert Keith

**Senior Secretary:**
Melanie Isaacs

**Little Theatre**

**Production Manager:**
Daniel Galloway

**Administrative Assistant:**
Susan Cole

**Wardrobe Co-ordinator:**
Illka Louw

**Lighting Technician:**
Marco Frontini
Workshop:
Keith Christians
Steven Jacobs
Mark Miller

Academic and professional courses:

First, the department offers the programme in Theatre and Performance, which equips students with the necessary skills in acting, community theatre and theatre making to enable them to pursue professional careers in the theatre and related fields such as film, television, advertising and teaching. Qualifications within this programme are (a) a four-year, Honours equivalent BA in Theatre and Performance, and (b) a three-year Performer's Diploma in Theatre. For details of the curricula for these programmes, please consult the Faculty of Humanities Performing and Creative Arts Handbook. At postgraduate level, the Department offers a coursework Masters degree in Theatre Making or Theatre Practice and a Masters degree in Applied Drama and Theatre Studies as well as an MFA in Film and Television Production.

Second, for students who want to study Drama and Theatre but do not wish to become theatre professionals, the department offers an undergraduate major in Drama which covers the academic subject Drama at first-, second- and third-year levels, and one course (two half-courses) in Stagecraft. At postgraduate level, the Department offers an Honours degree in Drama, a Masters in Applied Drama and Theatre Studies, and a Masters degree by dissertation which may include some practical work.

An outline syllabus for the drama major follows hereunder. All students taking Drama courses or Stagecraft should note that a degree of experiential learning through practical class work combined with research is a requirement of these courses.

Requirements for a major in Drama (DRM):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ONE of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRM1000F Introduction to Theatre and Performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRM1019S 20th Century Theatre Innovation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Second year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DRM2010F Making Theatre Mean(ing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRM2011S Learning through Drama and Theatre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Third year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DRM3010F Contemporary Performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRM3018S Introduction to Directing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:

(i) For DRM1019S: None
(ii) For DRM2010F and DRM2011S: DRM1000F or DRM1019S, or with the permission of the Head of Department
(iii) For DRM3010F: DRM2011S or DRM2010F, or with permission of the Head of Department
(iv) For DRM3018S: DRM3010F, or with the permission of the Head of Department

Entry requirements for Honours study:

1. In addition to the conditions for admission stated in the general Faculty rules for the Honours degree, candidates who wish to enrol for the Honours course in Drama should have obtained the following courses, depending on the year in which they first registered:
   (a) For students who registered in 1997 or prior to that:
       DRM100W (old course)
       DRM200W (old course)
       DRM300W (old course)
(b) For students who registered in 1998:
   DRM100W (old course), and
   both DRM2010F and DRM2011S (new courses) and
   DRM3010F and DRM3018S (new courses)
(c) For students who registered from 1999 onward:
   DRM1000F or DRM1019S, and
   both DRM2010F and DRM2011S, and
   both DRM3010F and DRM3018S.

(NOTE: A final mark of 65% in the third-year courses is normally required in order for the student to be considered for acceptance into Honours. Students who have not fulfilled the above requirements may consult with the Head of Department who, in exceptional circumstances, may recommend entrance into Honours.)

2. Attending an interview:
   Candidates should seek this interview with the Drama Honours Co-ordinator (Associate Professor Gay Morris) before the end of the previous academic year, and reading should commence during the long vacation.

Entry into teaching careers:
Students wishing to teach Drama, Theatre and/or Arts and Culture should major in Drama. Courses in dance, music, film and media and/or the fine arts and art history are a strong recommendation. This should be followed by the PGCE in the School of Education. Teaching can also be studied in Drama Honours.

NOTE: In all courses modification may be made to the syllabus within the general framework set out here.

Course outlines:

**DRM1000F INTRODUCTION TO THEATRE AND PERFORMANCE**
First-year, first-semester course, three or four lectures per week and one afternoon per week for practicals.
**Convenor:** Ms Y Banning.
**Entrance requirements:** None.
**Course outline:**
(a) An introduction to Drama and Theatre elements - Space, Actor and Audience.
(b) The roots of Drama (Classical Greek, African and Asian) in the relationship between theatre and society.
(c) Theatre visits to see productions. Students must attend such theatre visits as may be arranged from time to time.
(d) Practical Drama and theatre classes
   (i) Students in the Theatre and Performance programme will explore aspects of performance in their Group Classes with the view to presentation of a project at the end of the semester.
   (ii) Students in other programmes or in the general BA studying Drama will have compulsory practical classes on Tuesdays from 14h00 - 17h45, where aspects of (a) and (b) will be explored with the view to a theatrical presentation at the end of both the first and second quarters. In addition, students may choose to be involved in productions which are staged at the Hiddingh Campus. Notices of audition opportunities will be posted on the Drama boards in Beattie Building.
**Lectures:** 3rd period and Tuesdays, 14h00 - 17h45.
**NOTE:** Students whose choice of subjects may involve a timetable clash with the Drama practical should discuss this with the course co-ordinator prior to or at registration. In certain circumstances it may be possible to accommodate such students.
**DP requirements:** Attendance at lectures, all practical classes, satisfactory presentation of
assignments and theatre visits are compulsory for DP certificate purposes.

**Assessment:**

(i) Coursework, which includes practical experience and presentation, research and documentation, and essays, counts 60% of the final mark. A portion of this work will be submitted to the external examiner.

(ii) Two-hour written examination counts 40% of the final mark.

A sub-minimum of 40% must be achieved in each of (i) and (ii).

---

**DRM1019S  20TH CENTURY THEATRE INNOVATION**

First-year, second-semester course, three or four lectures per week and one afternoon per week for practicals.

**Convenor:** Ms Y Banning.

**Entrance requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**

(a) Realism and Stanislavsky.

(b) Political Theatre: Brecht and Boal.

(c) Holy Theatre: Grotowski.

(d) South African Theatre: 1900 to the present day.

(e) Theatre Visits: Students must attend such theatre visits as may be arranged.

(f) Practical Drama. All students on this course will have compulsory practical classes on Tuesdays from 14h00 - 17h45 where aspects of (a) or (b) or (c) or (d) will be explored with the view to the presentation of a practical project at the end of the third quarter. A self-initiated group project will also be undertaken for presentation early in the fourth quarter.

**Lectures:** 3rd period and Tuesdays, 14h00 - 17h45.

**NOTE:** Students whose choice of subjects may involve a timetable clash with the Drama practical should discuss this with the course co-ordinator prior to or at registration. In certain circumstances it may be possible to accommodate such students.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at lectures, all practical classes, satisfactory presentation of assignments and theatre visits are compulsory for DP certificate purposes.

**Assessment:**

(i) Coursework, which includes practical experience and presentation, research and documentation, and essays, counts 60% of the final mark. A portion of this work will be submitted to the external examiner.

(ii) Two-hour written examination counts 40% of the final mark.

A sub-minimum of 40% must be achieved in each of (i) and (ii).

---

**DRM2010F  MAKING THEATRE MEAN(ING)**

Second-year, first-semester course; comprising three or four periods a week; lectures, and tutorials as appropriate; and one practical session per week.

**Convenor:** Ms Y Banning.

**Entrance requirements:** DRM1000F or DRM1019S, or with the approval of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

Students will analyse how theatrical meaning is made by both theatre makers and audiences. Students will be introduced to theatre semiotics as a tool for performance analysis. Then through case studies of selected playscripts and video recordings of plays in performance, students analyse theatrical performance in terms of action, character, structure and language.

In practical classes, students interpret their set texts and create and perform short original group theatre pieces, in which they learn to use the voice and body in developing character and action and to conceptualise and structure a theatrical scene.

All students taking this course are required to attend Drama Department productions and are urged
to attend other theatrical productions in Cape Town.

Lectures: Mondays, Tuesdays and Wednesdays (Thursdays or Fridays only by prior notification), 2nd period on Upper Campus; practicals on Hiddingh Campus on Thursdays from 14h00 - 17h45.

DP requirements:
Submission of all written assignments and presentation of all performance tasks; and attendance at all practical classes. Students in the Theatre and Performance programme may not attend the Thursday practical classes when they attend professional training practical classes in Acting, Voice and Movement, which are deemed equivalent.

Assessment:
(i) Coursework, which includes practical experience and presentation, research and documentation, and essays, counts 60% of the final mark. A portion of this work will be submitted to the external examiner.

(ii) Two-hour examination counts for 40% of the final mark.

(iii) In order to pass, a sub-minimum of 40% must be achieved in coursework and examinations.

DRM2011S  LEARNING THROUGH DRAMA AND THEATRE
Second-year, second-semester course; comprising three or four periods a week; lectures, workshops and tutorials as appropriate; and one practical session per week.

Convenor: Associate Professor G Morris.

Entrance requirements: For students in the Theatre and Performance programme, either DRM1000F or DRM1019S. For students in other programmes, DRM1000F or DRM1019S, or permission of the Head of Department, or REL1011F or SLL1001F/S or DRM2010F.

Course outline:
By means of lectures, workshops, tutorials and practical classes, students will experience and reflect on learning in and through the symbolic activities of drama and theatre. Drama teaching and learning strategies will be explored. Models of drama and theatre in education and their use and value for South African education will be offered.

In practical classes students will study improvisation and will work in small groups to devise and present a theatre in education or educational theatre programme for a specific target audience. These will be performed in schools or other venues appropriate to the target audience. Students will submit a script of their TIE programme along with a full report of the project. A research essay on an aspect of theatre or drama performance in South Africa is also a requirement.

Lectures: Mondays, Tuesdays and Wednesdays (Thursdays or Fridays only by prior notification), 2nd period on Upper Campus; practicals on Hiddingh Campus on Thursdays from 14h00 - 17h45.

DP requirements: 100% attendance at all practical classes, rehearsals, tutorials and performances; and completion of all written and practical assignments.

Assessment:
(i) Coursework, which includes practical classes, written and performance assignments, counts for 60% of the final mark. A portion of this work will be submitted to the external examiner.

(ii) Two-hour examination counts for 40% of the final mark.

(iii) In order to pass, a sub-minimum of 40% must be achieved in coursework and examinations.

DRM3010F  CONTEMPORARY PERFORMANCE
Third-year, first-semester course, up to three 90-minute periods per week and a practical afternoon for students not in the Theatre and Performance programme.

Convenor: Associate Professor C Weare.

Entrance requirements: DRM2010F or DRM2011S or with permission of the Head of Department.

Course outline:
The course will explore major theatrical groups who have "broken the rules" and who have contributed to the creation of contemporary theatre performances in South Africa and elsewhere. The course will combine theoretical and practical approaches to Theatre Making.
Course components:
All students will complete essays and class tasks, a practical group, theatre making project, as well as a written examination in June.

Class meetings: All meetings take place on the Hiddingh Campus.

Lectures: 5th and meridian on Mondays, Thursdays and Fridays, plus rehearsals from 14h00 - 15h45 on Fridays.

DP requirements: Satisfactory attendance and participation at all scheduled course meetings and practical classes, and submission of all written or practical work by the due dates is compulsory for DP certificate purposes.

Assessment:
(i) Coursework: 50% of final mark.
(ii) Two-hour examination: 50% of final mark.
A sub-minimum of 45% must be achieved in (i) and (ii).

DRM3018S INTRODUCTION TO DIRECTING
Third-year, second-semester course, up to three 90-minute periods per week.

Convenor: Mr G Hyland.

Entrance requirements: DRM3010F or by permission of the Head of Department.

Course outline:
The course investigates the role and function of the director of the scripted play, including the director's preparation for production, particularly with regard to research, production and marketing, conceptualisation and design, as well as directorial planning and strategies.

Course components:
Students undertake two major assignments:
(a) an individual research essay, and
(b) a group directing project.

Classes, tests, practical tasks and individual research all support the above major assignments.

Class meetings: All meetings take place on the Hiddingh Campus.

Lectures: 5th and meridian on Mondays, Thursday and Fridays, plus practicals on Fridays during 6th and 7th periods.

DP requirements: Satisfactory attendance at and participation in all scheduled course meetings and practical classes, and submission of all written and/or practical work by the due dates is compulsory for DP certificate purposes.

Assessment:
(i) Coursework: 60% of final mark. A portion of this work will be submitted to the external examiner.
(ii) Two-hour written examination: 40% of final mark.
A sub-minimum of 45% must be achieved in (i) and (ii).

For full details of all programmes and courses offered by the Department of Drama, please consult the Faculty of Humanities Performing and Creative Arts Handbook.
SCHOOL OF ECONOMICS  
(Jointly established in the Faculties of Commerce and Humanities)

The department is housed in the Leslie Social Science Building.  
Telephone Number: (021) 650 2723.  
The letter code for the Department is ECO.  
Departmental website: http://www.commerce.uct.ac.za/economics.

Professor and Director of the School:  
J Fedderke, BCom(Hons) Natal MPhil PhD Cantab

Professors:  
H Abraham, MA Tel Aviv PhD Hebrew University  
D E Kaplan, BA BCom Cape Town MA Kent DPhil Sussex  
M V Leibrandt, B SocSc(Hons) Rhodes MA PhD Notre Dame  
N Nattrass, BA Stell BSocSc(Hons) Cape Town MA Natal MSc DPhil Oxon  
D Ross, BA MA PhD Western Ontario

Associate Professors:  
H Bhorat, BSocSc(Hons) Cape Town MA PhD Stell  
A Black, BA Cape Town BA(Hons) Sussex MSocSc Natal  
L Edwards, BA Cape Town BA(Hons) Rhodes MA Cape Town MSc LSE PhD Cape Town  
E Giovannetti, MPhil PhD Cantab PhD Rome  
A Leiman, BA(Hons) Natal BA(Hons) Unisa HDE MA Cape Town  
N Viegi, BA(Hons) Pisa MSc Glasgow PhD Strathclyde  
M Wittenberg, BA(Hons) MA Natal MCom Witwatersrand PhD Natal

Senior Lecturers:  
J Burns, BCom(Hons) Natal MPhil Cantab PhD Massachusetts  
B Conradie, BSc(Hons) MSc Stell PhD Colorado  
S Hassan, BCom(Hons) MCom Cape Town MSc LSE MPhil Cantab  
E Muchapondwa, BSc MSc Zimbabwe PHL PhD Göteborg  
S Muradzikwa, BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc Cape Town  
C van Walbeek, BCom(Hons) MCom Stell PhD Cape Town  
A Zimper, Diploma in Economics Berlin PhD Mannheim

Lecturers:  
R Daniels, BSc MA Auckland  
C Mlatsheni, BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc Cape Town  
N Pillay, BCom(Hons) Cape Town  
W Simbanegavi, BSc Zimbabwe MSc Oslo PhD Stockholm School of Economics  
M Visser, BSc(Hons) MCom Cape Town  
J Wakeford, BA(Hons) MA Cape Town MPhil Cantab

Duly performed certificates for special admissions programme students:

A special admissions programme student shall meet the duly performed requirements listed for any course in the curriculum and in addition shall be required to have attended at least 70% of all tutorials of the course including special tutorials arranged for such students. Failure to meet this requirement may result in the student not being granted a duly performed certificate.
Requirements for a major in Economics (ECO):

First year
ALL of the following:
ECO1010F Microeconomics
ECO1011S Macroeconomics
STA1001F Statistics 1001
STA1000S Statistics 1000

Second year
ECO2003F Microeconomics II
ECO2004S Macroeconomics II
ONE of the following:
ECO2007S Cooperation and Competition
ECO2008S Development Economics (was ECO205S)

Third year
ECO3020F Advanced Macroeconomics and Microeconomics
TWO of the following:
ECO3009F Natural Resource Economics
ECO3016F History of Economic Thought
ECO3021S Quantitative Methods in Economics
ECO3022S Advanced Labour Economics
ECO3023S Public Sector Economics
ECO3024F International Trade and Finance
ECO3025S Applied International Trade Bargaining

Entrance requirements:
A minimum of 45 Matric points and Matric Mathematics D (HG). B or above for SG Mathematics may be considered only for applicants from schools where HG Mathematics was not offered.

Prerequisites:
(i) For ECO2003F: ECO1010F/S/H
(ii) For ECO2004S: ECO1010F/S/H and ECO1011F/S
(iii) For ECO2007S: ECO1010F/S/H
(iv) For ECO2008S: ECO1010F/S/H and ECO1011F/S
(vi) For ECO3009F: ECO1010F/S/H, ECO1011F/S and ECO2003F plus ECO2004S or any Science major at the 2000 level
(vii) For ECO3022S, ECO3023S, ECO3025S: ECO2003F and ECO2004S
(viii) For ECO3016F: ECO1010F/S/H, ECO1011F/S, and ECO2003F plus ECO2004S or two 2000-level courses in either Politics, Philosophy or History

Entrance requirements for Honours
All students who wish to study towards an Honours degree in Economics must take ECO3021S, and it is recommended that they take ECO2007S.

Course outlines:
Additional information:
Course information, such as the dates, times and venues of lectures, tutorials and tests, and of the prescribed and recommended books will be posted on the School of Economics notice board at the beginning of the semester.
**ECO1006F ECONOMICS FOR NON-SPECIALISTS**

First-year, first-semester course, 2 double lectures per week.

*Note: This course is designed for students intending to do only one semester of economics. It is therefore aimed at providing a broad perspective on the subject, and concentrates more on an understanding of theoretical concepts and their application than it does on rigorous proofs and analysis. Only students who are registered in the Faculty of Humanities may register for this course.*

**Convenor:** E Blecher.

**Course outline:**

The course covers the following areas: the economic problem; economic systems; price theory and markets; labour markets; macroeconomics; money and monetary policy, international trade, the balance of payments and exchange rates; and the public sector. The course focuses on the application of economic principles in a South African context.

**DP requirements:**

All class tests and assignments to be completed. Regular attendance at weekly tutorials. A weighted average mark of 40% for tests, tutorials and assignments. Only students who have obtained DP certificates may write the final examination.

**Assessment:**

- Tests and tutorials: 45%
- June examination: 55%

*NOTE: Credit will not be given for both ECO1006F and ECO1010F/S.*

---

**ECO1010F/S MICROECONOMICS**

First-year, first- or second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial or workshop per week.

**Convenors:** Associate Professor A Leiman and L Smith.

**Entrance requirements:** 45 Matric points, with a minimum of an A in Mathematics (SG) or a D in Mathematics (HG). Alternatively, senior students who have passed the equivalent of 6 semester courses.

**Co-requisites:** Students must be simultaneously enrolled for STA1001F or MAM1002W, or equivalent.

**Course outline:**

The course focuses on demand and supply analysis; consumer behaviour; production functions and production costs; market forms, the distribution of income, and international trade.

**DP requirements:**

All class tests and compulsory written assignments (essays and tutorials) have to be completed, and an average year mark of at least 40% has to be achieved. Only students who have obtained DP certificates may write the final examination.

**Assessment:**

- Classwork (tests, tutorials): 50%
- June or October/November examination: 50%

*NOTE: Credit will not be given for both ECO1006F and ECO1010F/S.*

---

**ECO1010H MICROECONOMICS**

First-year, whole-year half course, 5 lectures and 1 double period tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** N Narker.

**Entrance requirements:** This course is designed for first-year BCom and BBusSc Special Admissions students and first-year students from other faculties who do not meet the entrance requirements for ECO1010F/S Microeconomics. In the case of Humanities, only students registered for the Extended BSocSc Degree Programme may register for this course.

**Course outline:**

The course focuses on demand and supply analysis; consumer behaviour; production functions and
production costs; market forms and trade. In addition, the course incorporates the principles, language and methods of analysis in economics. This includes: critical interpretation of data; the basic tools of theoretical and statistical analysis, and the transfer and incorporation of economic information into written analysis and comment.

**DP requirements:**
All class tests and assignments to be completed; at least 70% attendance at tutorials; an average year mark of at least 40%. Only students who have obtained DP certificates may write the final examination.

**Assessment:**
Tests, essays, and tutorials 50%
October/November examination 50%

---

**ECO1011F MACROECONOMICS**
First-year, first-semester course, 5 lectures and 1 double tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** L Smith.

**Entrance requirements:** This course is open only to second-year BCom (CADP), BBusSc (SIM) and Humanities Extended Degree Programme students. A minimum mark of 50% is required for ECO1010F/S/H Microeconomics.

**Course outline:**
The course covers the following areas: circular flow; national income accounting; Keynesian aggregate spending; aggregate demand and supply; money, interest rates and exchange rates; inflation, monetary, fiscal and balance of payments policy.

**DP requirements:**
All class tests and assignments to be completed; at least 70% attendance at tutorials; an average year mark of at least 40%. Only students who have obtained DP certificates may write the final examination.

**Assessment:**
Classwork (tests, tutorials) 50%
June examination 50%

---

**ECO1011S MACROECONOMICS**
First-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial or workshop per week.

**NOTE:** No student may be concurrently registered for ECO1010S and ECO1011S.

**Convenor:** Dr C van Walbeek.

**Entrance requirements:** A student must pass or be granted permission to write a supplementary examination for ECO1010F/S/H/X.

**Co-requisites:** Students must be simultaneously enrolled for STA1000S.

**Course outline:**
The course covers the following areas: circular flow; national income accounting; Keynesian aggregate spending; aggregate demand and supply; money, interest rates and exchange rates; inflation, monetary, fiscal and balance of payments policy.

**DP requirements:**
At least 40% average for both tests. At least 70% attendance at tutorials and satisfactory completion of essay assignments.

**Assessment:**
Classwork (tests, tutorials) 50%
October/November examination 50%

---

**ECO2003F MICROECONOMICS II**
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures/workshops per week.
Convenor: Dr J Burns.

**Entrance requirements:** ECO1010F/S/H Microeconomics.

**Course outline:**
The course formalises consumer and producer optimisation, and explores factor markets under perfect and imperfect competition before introducing general equilibrium theory graphically and algebraically. The final section, on industrial organisation, looks at models that relay the critical assumptions of GE. All sections of this course incorporate applications. The sequence and number of lectures allocated to topics is variable.

**DP requirements:**
An average year mark of at least 40% must be attained for ECO2003F.

**Assessment:**
- Classwork (tests and essays) 50%
- June examination 50%

---

**ECO2004S MACROECONOMICS II**
Second-year, second-semester course, 5 lectures/workshops per week.

**Convenor:** N Samouilhan.

**Entrance requirements:** ECO1010F/S/H Microeconomics and ECO1011F/S Macroeconomics. A student will be permitted to take ECO2004S without having passed ECO2003F, although it is desirable to pass ECO2003F prior to taking ECO2004S.

**Course outline:**
The course builds upon ECO1011S Macroeconomics as follows: short run IS-LM, medium run AS-AD and long run Solow Swan treatment of the macroeconomy. Analysis of the open economy, such as trade and exchange rate regimes.

**DP requirements:**
At least 40% average for tests; submission and attendance of tutorials. Attendance at all class tests.

**Assessment:**
- Class tests, tutorials 50%
- October/November examination 50%

---

**ECO2007S COOPERATION AND COMPETITION**
Second-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Professor D Ross.

**Entrance requirements:** ECO1010F/S/H Microeconomics.

**Course outline:**
This is an introductory course on game theory, the body of techniques for analysing strategic interaction.

**DP requirements:**
Completion of all coursework; at least 75% attendance at tutorials. An average year mark of at least 40% must be attained for ECO2007S.

**Assessment:**
- Coursework 40%
- October/November examination 60%

---

**ECO2008S DEVELOPMENT ECONOMICS (was ECO205S)**
Second-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week and occasional workshops.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor A Black.

**Entrance requirements:** ECO1010F/S/H Microeconomics and ECO1011F/S Macroeconomics.

**Course outline:**
The course provides an introduction to development economics as well as applied problems in the
field of development, and development strategies. Topics covered may vary, but are likely to include an overview over debates in development economics, the meaning of development and how to measure progress; economic growth and development; the role of development aid and foreign investment; industrial strategies; technological capability; stabilisation and structural adjustment; and alternative strategies for sustainable development. The discussion is both theoretical and applied.

**DP requirements:**
All essays submitted and all tests attended. An average year mark of at least 40%.

**Assessment:**
Classwork (tests and essays) 40%
October/November examination 60%

---

ECO3009F  NATURAL RESOURCE ECONOMICS
Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week.

**Convenor:** Dr B Conradie.

**Entrance requirements:** Students must have completed ECO1010F/S/H Microeconomics and ECO1011F/S Macroeconomics and ECO2003F Microeconomics II and ECO2004S Macroeconomics II, or a Science major at the 2000 level.

**Course outline:**
The course explores the water economics literature by asking three questions: (1) Is water scarce and how would we measure that? (2) How should scarce water be allocated? (3) How does one measure the value of water in its multiple uses? All sections of this course incorporate applications.

**DP requirements:** All essays submitted and tests attended, an average year mark of at least 40%.

**Assessment:**
Classwork (tests and essays) 40%
June examination 60%

---

ECO3016F  HISTORY OF ECONOMIC THOUGHT
Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 workshop per week.

**Convenor:** J Wakeford.

**Entrance requirements:** ECO1010F/S/H Microeconomics and ECO1011F/S Macroeconomics; either ECO2003F and ECO2004S (recommended) or two 2000-level courses in either Philosophy, Politics or History.

**Objective:** This course is intended to provide students with an overview of the historical development of economic thought and thereby place the theory learned in core economics courses within a broader perspective. It consists of a broad sampling of the theories of prominent individual economic thinkers as well as schools of economic thought.

**Course outline:**
Topics include the following: a review of pre-modern economic thought; mercantilism; physiocracy; the classical political economy of Smith, Malthus and Ricardo; socialist economic thought and Marx; utilitarianism, marginalism and the rise of neoclassical economics; the German historical school; Keynes and Keynesian economics; monetary economics and the Chicago school; and an introduction to heterodox schools of thought, such as evolutionary, institutionalist, post-modern and ecological approaches.

**DP requirements:**
All essays to be submitted and all tests to be attended. An average year mark of at least 40%.

**Assessment:**
Classwork (tests and essays) 40%
June examination 60%
ECO3020F ADVANCED MACROECONOMICS AND MICROECONOMICS

Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week and occasional workshops.

Convenor: Dr W Simbanegavi.

Entrance requirements: Students must have completed ECO2003F Microeconomics II and ECO2004S Macroeconomics II; STA1000S Statistics 1000 and STA1001F Statistics 1001 or equivalent.

Course outline:
This is a compulsory core module for all students taking economics programmes. This course is divided into (i) microeconomics and (ii) macroeconomics. Microeconomics covers general equilibrium analysis under perfect competition, imperfect competition, externalities and imperfect information. Welfare economics is also dealt with. Macroeconomics covers expectations and growth and builds on ECO2004S.

DP requirements: An average of at least 40% for both Microeconomics Test and Macroeconomics Test must be attained.

Assessment:
Classwork (tests and essays) 40%
June examination 60%

ECO3021S QUANTITATIVE METHODS IN ECONOMICS

Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 practical per week.

Convenor: N Pillay.

Entrance requirements: ECO2003F and ECO2004F.

Course outline:
The emphasis in this course is to introduce students to new tools and techniques for quantitative analysis in the social and behavioural sciences. In this respect it is aimed at students in all of our programmes wishing to pursue postgraduate studies in economics. The course covers two interrelated modules, and while the sequence may vary from year to year, the broad areas of study include the following:

Module one focuses on formal modelling tools for economists including multivariate calculus, linear algebra, comparative statics, and constrained and unconstrained optimisation.

Module two provides a broad introduction to empirical tools for economic and social analysis, in particular the use of cross-sectional and time series econometric techniques. During this course, students will be introduced to various programming environments for computational economics and econometrics.

DP requirements: All tests are compulsory. An average year mark of at least 40%.

Assessment:
Classwork assignments, class tests and projects 50%
October/November examination 50%

ECO3022S ADVANCED LABOUR ECONOMICS

Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

Convenor: C Mlatsheni.

Entrance requirements: ECO2003F and ECO2004S.

Course outline:
The course covers a review of labour demand and supply; alternative approaches to labour economics and to the SA labour market; the economics of education and training; earnings inequality and discrimination; the Economics of Trade Union Collective bargaining; unemployment.

DP requirements: To write both tests and to obtain at least 40% year mark for entry into the exam.
**Assessment:**
Coursework (tests)  40%  
October/November examination  60%

**ECO3023S  PUBLIC SECTOR ECONOMICS**
Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 workshop per week.
**Convenor:** Dr W Simbanegavi.
**Entrance requirements:** ECO2003F and ECO2004S.
**Course outline:**
The following topics are covered in this course:
(i) Public Choice: Economic efficiency and the nature of distributive justice; criteria for policy evaluation; money vs goods subsidies; sources of market failure; voting and the provision of public goods.
(ii) Public Sector microeconomic issues: public and merit goods; natural monopoly and network industries; regulation; privatisation; taxation, incentives and transfers and investment appraisal in the public sector.
(iii) Public Finance: public sector budgeting; the rationale, process and outcomes; with applications from the SA budget.
(iv) Economic policy, budgeting and financing issues in South Africa.
**DP requirements:** Attendance at tests and submission of all essays. Average year mark of at least 40%.
**Assessment:**
Classwork (tests and essays)  45%  
October/November examination  55%

**ECO3024F  INTERNATIONAL TRADE AND FINANCE**
Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 workshop per week.
**Convenor:** Associate Professor L Edwards.
**Co-requisites:** ECO3020F Advanced Macroeconomics and Microeconomics.
**Course outline:**
The course is divided into (i) international trade and (ii) international finance
(i) International trade covers the theories of international trade and trade policy; current issues in international trade; trade and development, and South Africa in world trade.
(ii) The international finance section covers models of balance of payments adjustments under fixed exchange rates; the alternative models of exchange rate determination, and South African policy issues.
**DP requirements:** One test attended or an alternate assessment at convenor’s discretion. An average year mark of at least 40%.
**Assessment:**
Classwork (tests and essays)  40%  
June examination  60%

**ECO3025S  APPLIED INTERNATIONAL TRADE BARGAINING**
Third-year, second-semester course, 4 days per week.
**Convenor:** Professor D Ross.
**Entrance requirements:** ECO2003F and ECO2004S.
**Course outline:**
This course is a simulation of a WTO trade negotiating round. Students will be divided into groups, each 'representing' a country or trade bloc, and, after researching their region’s endowments, will participate in supervised negotiations.
DP requirements: All tutorials to be attended. An average year mark of at least 40%.

Assessment:
Projects and classwork (including test)  40%
Final research report 60%

Note: There is no final examination for this course. The final research report replaces the final examination. There is no supplementary examination (report) for this course.
The School of Education is situated in the Humanities Graduate School Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus.
General Enquiries: 650 2769.
Internet: ingrid.thom@uct.ac.za
Website: http://www.uct.ac.za/depts/educate

**Associate Professor and Director:**
R C Laugksch, BSc HDE(PG) Sec Cape Town BSc(Hons) UPE MSc PhD Cape Town

**Professors:**
M P Ensor, BSoSc Natal BA(Hons) Cape Town DipTertEd Unisa CertEd MSc(Ed) PhD Lond
J P Muller, MA UPE Doctorandus Leiden PhD Cape Town
C A Soudien, BA(Hons) HDE MA Cape Town BEd Unisa EdM PhD SUNY

**Associate Professors:**
C J Breen, BSc(Eng) Cape Town STD Stell MEd Exeter MPhil Cantab
K Rochford, TSTC BSc Melbourne MEd PhD Cape Town
R F Siebörger, BA(Hons) NHED BEd MA Rhodes MPhil Exeter

**Senior Lecturers:**
N Bakker, BA(Hons) STD BEd MPhil MA Cape Town
J Baxen, PTD Bechet College BA Unisa MEd Leeds PhD Cape Town
Z Davis, BA MPhil PhD Cape Town
J D Gilmour, BBusSc Cape Town MA Sussex
H Jacklin, BA(Hons) TTHD MEd PhD Witwatersrand PG Diploma Speech and Drama Cape Town
M H Prinsloo, BA(Hons) Natal MEd Lond PhD Cape Town

**Lecturer:**
J Hardman, BSoSc(Hons) MSocSc (Psychology) Natal

**Administrative Assistant:**
I Thom

**Senior Secretary:**
C Kleinsmith

**Departmental Assistant (Audio Visual):**
L Macleod

**Requirements for recognition of university degrees for teaching purposes**

Students who are considering a career in teaching are advised that the entry requirements for the Postgraduate Certificate in Education are as follows:
Five whole-year equivalent courses in at least two of the following list of subjects, in the combination of 3+2, 2+2+1, or 3+1+1 years of study in each. For secondary teaching it is desirable that there should be a major in one of these subjects.
A language(s), communication, mathematics, the natural sciences, geography, environmental studies, historical studies (including archaeology), religious studies, psychology, accounting, economics, music, fine art, drama, dance, information systems, computer science, human movement studies. Additionally, one course only in one of the following will be recognised: sociology, philosophy, anthropology, development studies, management, statistics.
It is recommended that students should seek advice, if necessary, when making subject choices. Contact Dr Jean Baxen (primary school) or Dr Zain Davis (high school). Full rules and curricular details for the Postgraduate Certificate in Education may be found in the Faculty of Humanities Graduate School Handbook.

NOTE: Completion of a Certificate, Advanced Certificate, Diploma or Further Diploma is not normally sufficient qualification for admission into an honours programme.

**Diploma in Education [HA006]**
* (Formerly Certificate in Adult Education, Training and Development)*

Convenors: J McMillan and J Saldanha.

**General introduction:**
The Diploma in Education provides a programme of initial professional education for practitioners who have work experience in adult education and training.

**General aims of the course:**
The course aims at developing:

(1) A grasp of the fields of adult education, community education and workplace education and training as they have developed within a broader social and historical context of South Africa;

(2) Basic familiarity with some of the main theoretical traditions in the field of adult education, as well as theories of community development and organisational development;

(3) Practical skills necessary for competent practice of adult education and training; and

(4) Communicative competence to meet the formal academic criteria necessary to undertake further university study.

**Admission requirements:**
A person shall not be admitted as a candidate for the diploma unless he or she

(a) has at least two years experience approved by the Head of Department; and

(b) has a senior school leaving certificate or a Matriculation certificate; or

(c) has in any other manner attained a measure of competence which, in the opinion of Senate, is adequate for purposes of admission as a candidate.

**Length of curriculum:**
The curriculum shall extend over two years of part-time study or one year of full-time study.

**Times of classes:**
Classes will be held in the late afternoon or at another time to be determined by the course convenors.

**CURRICULUM:**

**First year**

(a) EDN1000H Introduction to Adult Learning

(b) EDN1001H Organisation Development

(c) EDN1014W Designing and Facilitating Learning Events

**Second year**

(a) EDN2000H Foundations of Adult Learning Theory

(b) EDN2001H Field Study

(c) EDN2016W Fields and Sites of ETD Practice
Award of the diploma:
(a) A candidate must pass each course within the curriculum to be awarded the diploma.
(b) The diploma may be awarded with distinction where an overall average result of 75% or more is obtained.

NOTES:
(i) A candidate who successfully completes the first year of the diploma programme but does not wish to proceed to the second year will be awarded a certificate of course completion by the School of Education.
(ii) The programme is not offered by correspondence. Participants will need to be resident within travelling distance of Cape Town.

Course outlines:
The first year will provide an introduction to learning theory, but this will be closely linked to the practical development of facilitation and design skills. The second year aims to enhance professional competence by locating practice theoretically and contextually. Academic development will be an important component of both years 1 and 2.

FIRST YEAR:

EDN1000H  INTRODUCTION TO ADULT LEARNING
Convenor: J Saldanha.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
This course will introduce students to theories of learning through reflection on their own experience of, and role as learners and educators. Students will develop a more critical understanding of the assumptions about learning and teaching implicit in their own practice.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance record and submission of all assignments and projects.
Assessment: Two assignments count for 50% each.

EDN1001H  ORGANISATION DEVELOPMENT
Convenor: J McMillan.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
This course will introduce students to theories of organisation development, and will develop practical skills in areas such as goal-setting, planning and working in groups.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance record and submission of all assignments and projects.
Assessment: Assignment counts for 50% and project counts for 50%.

EDN1014W  DESIGNING AND FACILITATING LEARNING EVENTS
Convenor: J Saldanha.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
This course will introduce students to the theory and practice of design, and will involve students in practical design projects. Practical work will allow them to apply their understanding of "learning", and will include the development of planning skills and some understanding of, and skills in, evaluation and assessment.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance record and submission of all assignments and projects.
Assessment: Project counts for 100%.
SECOND YEAR:

**EDN2000H  FOUNDATIONS OF ADULT LEARNING THEORY**
Convenor: J McMillan.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline: Students are introduced to some of the basic concepts of social theory, and explore different ways of viewing the relationship between education, social theory and development.
**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance record and submission of all assignments and projects.
**Assessment:** Two assignments count for 50% each.

**EDN2001H  FIELD STUDY**
Convenor: J Saldanha.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline: Students will undertake a field study project, located within a particular practitioner role and specific to a particular context. This course will provide the practitioner stream with the opportunity to develop professional practice which is appropriate to role and context.
**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance plus satisfactory completion of all assignments and projects.
**Assessment:** Project counts for 100%.

**EDN2016W  FIELDS AND SITES OF ETD PRACTICE**
Convenor: J Saldanha.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline: This course will examine the notion of the Education, Training and Development Practitioner, as well as different fields or sites of education, training and development practice. It will explore the historical bases and institutional/organisational forms characteristic of these fields or sites, and how these contexts construct different learner and practitioner roles.
**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance record and submission of all assignments and projects.
**Assessment:** Assignment counts for 50% and project counts for 50%.

For the Advanced Certificate in Education, see the Faculty of Humanities Graduate School Handbook.
The Department of English Language and Literature, the Linguistics Section and Creative Writing are housed in the Arts Building, located on University Avenue.

The letter code for the Department is ELL.

The Department can be contacted by email at susan.buchanan@uct.ac.za and the Section of Linguistics at linguist@humanities.uct.ac.za.

Associate Professor and Head of Department:
G Fincham, BA Columbia MA Tel Aviv DPhil York

Emeritus Professors:
G L Haresnape, BA BA(Hons) MA Cape Town PhD Sheffield
R G Lass, BA New School NY PhD Yale

Honorary Professor:
A P Brink, MA PU vir CHO DLitt Rhodes DLitt (hc) Witwatersrand Chevalier de la Légion d'honneur, Officier de l'Ordre des Arts et des Lettres

Professors:
B Cooper, MA Birmingham PhD Sussex
J A Higgins, MA Cantab PhD Cape Town
K M McCormick, BA(Hons) UED Natal DipEd MA Lond PhD Cape Town
R Mesthrie, BPaed UDW BA(Hons) Cape Town BA(Hons) Unisa MA Texas PhD Cape Town
D J Schalkwyk, BA(Hons) Stell BA(Hons) Unisa MA Stell MA DPhil York
K Sole, BA(Hons) Witwatersrand MA Lond PhD Witwatersrand
S F T Watson, MA PhD Cape Town

Associate Professors:
R S Edgecombe, MA Rhodes PhD Cantab
N Love, MA DPhil Oxon

Senior Lecturers:
P Anderson, BA(Hons) Cape Town MA Oxon PhD Cape Town
C Clarkson, PhD York
N Distiller, BA(Hons) Cape Town MA Oxon PhD Cape Town
H Garuba, MA PhD Ibadan
S Raditlhalo, PhD Groningen

Lecturer:
S Bowerman, BA(Hons) MA Cape Town
R Chirambo, BEd(Hons) Malawi PhD Minnesota
I Coovadia, MA Havard, MFA (Fiction Writing) Cornell PhD Yale

Administrative Officer:
Mrs S Buchanan, BSocSc(Hons) Natal BA(Hons) MA Cape Town

Senior Secretary:
Ms F Steffenson
Departmental handbook:
Detailed information on curricula, booklists and other academic matters is contained in the departmental and course handbooks available from the Department. Course information is available on the English Department website (http://www.web.uct.ac.za/depts/english/). Information on Creative Writing is available on http://www.creativewriting.uct.ac.za. Information on Linguistics is available http://www.uct.ac.za/faculties/humanities/dept/english/ling/.

Repeating courses:
Students may be refused permission to repeat a course if their record is poor, and no student will be permitted to repeat a second time.

Oral examinations:
All examinations may be supplemented by an oral examination, at the discretion of the examiners.

Modification of the syllabus:
The syllabus may be modified within the general framework set out here.

Majors offered in 2008
The Department of English offers two majors:

- ENGLISH
- LINGUISTICS

Requirements for a major in English (ELL):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL1013F English Literary Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL1017H Foundations in English Literary Studies <em>(Extended Degree Programme students only)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL1016S English Literary Studies II</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Second year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>At least ONE of the following: <em>(See requirements for major below)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL2007F African Literature and Language Studies I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL2010S African Literature and Language Studies II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONE of the following <em>(if only one is chosen from the above list)</em>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL2014F Shakespeare and Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL2015S Romance to Realism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Third year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ELL3005F Modernism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL3008S Postmodernism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE:
It is recommended that students take, in addition, one of the following:
SLL1003S European Literary Influences*
ELL1032F Introduction to Language Studies (was ELL119S)
*See entry under School of Languages and Literatures *(School-based courses)*.

All majoring students to take at least one of the following courses:
ELL2007F African Literature and Language I *(Southern African Literature)*
ELL2010S African Literature and Language II *(African Literature)*
Prerequisites:
(i) For ELL1016S: None
(ii) For any 2000-level English course: ELL1013F and one other ELL first-year course, or at the discretion of the Head of Department
(iii) For ELL3005F: any two of ELL2015S, ELL2007F, ELL2014F or ELL2010S, or at the discretion of the Head of Department
(iv) For ELL3008S: any two second-year ELL courses, or at the discretion of the Head of Department

Linguistics Section

The Linguistics Section is housed in the Arts Block, located on University Avenue. The Section can be contacted by email at linguist@humanities.uct.ac.za

Professor and Head of Section:
R Mesthrie, BPaed UDW BA(Hons) Cape Town BA(Hons) Unisa MA Texas PhD Cape Town

Departmental handbook:
A departmental handbook for the Linguistics Section of the Department will be available.

Introduction

The development by human beings of the power to communicate with one another by means of language, and their subsequent and continuing co-operative use of that power in transforming the world they live in, are among the most significant determinants of the human condition. Scholars have been inquiring into the origins, history, mechanism, structure and social roles of language and languages since the very beginnings of the intellectual tradition. Courses in this section not only offer an introduction to the range of such inquiries and an opportunity to participate in them, but above all foster the idea that an attempt to grasp the nature of language is an indispensable part of any serious attempt to understand what it is to be human.

Requirements for a major in Linguistics (LIN):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL1032F Introduction to Language Studies</td>
<td>ELL1033S Introduction to Applied Language Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(was ELL119S)</td>
<td>(was ELL118F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL2018F Linguistics IIA</td>
<td>ELL2019S Linguistics IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELL3021F Linguistics IIIA</td>
<td>ELL3022S Linguistics IIIB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For ELL2018F: ELL1032F (was ELL119S), or at the discretion of the Head of Section
(ii) For ELL2019S: ELL1032F (was ELL119S), or at the discretion of the Head of Section
(iii) For ELL3021F: ELL2108F and ELL2019S, or at the discretion of the Head of Section
(iv) For ELL3022S: ELL3021F or at the discretion of the Head of Section

Course outlines:

**ELL1013F  ENGLISH LITERARY STUDIES**

*(NOTE: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term - please consult the Centre for Open Learning.)*

First-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
**Convenor:** Dr P Anderson.  
**Entrance requirements:** None.  
**Course outline:**  
This course aims to introduce students to literary and rhetorical terms, and to basic issues in literary and linguistic theory. Different literary genres will be explored and analysed, including the novel, poetry and drama. Students will be introduced to different kinds of critical writing and will engage in honing their own writing skills.  
**DP requirements:**  
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at tutorials.  
**Assessment:**  
Lecture series: two-hour examination counts for 50% of the final mark; tutorial classwork counts for 50%.  

**ELL1016S ENGLISH LITERARY STUDIES II**  
First-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.  
**Convenor:** Dr P Anderson.  
**Entrance requirements:** None.  
**Course outline:**  
This course aims to extend the skills of ELL1013F. However, the study of language in literary studies will have, as its special focus, issues that arise in the South African context. The study of literature will include texts from southern Africa and other parts of the world.  
**DP requirements:**  
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at tutorials.  
**Assessment:**  
Lecture series: two-hour examination counts for 50% of the final mark; tutorial classwork counts for 50%.  

**ELL1017H FOUNDATIONS IN ENGLISH LITERARY STUDIES**  
First-year, whole-year course, 3 lectures, 1 tutorial and 1 Academic Advisor’s class per week.  
**Convenor:** Dr P Anderson.  
**Entrance requirements:** ELL1017H is only open to students registered in the Humanities Faculty Non-Quantitative Extended Degree Programme (HB061 or HB062).  
**Course outline:**  
This is a whole-year course incorporating ELL1013F as well as foundational skills and concepts and supplementary material. It thus addresses essential skills and concepts for higher learning in the non-quantitative courses of the Humanities. Core issues include concepts of textuality (such as types and modes, representation, narrative and point of view), skills of critical analysis and academic literacy.  
**DP requirements:**  
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at tutorials and workshops.  
**Assessment:**  
Two-hour examination in June counts for 50% of the final mark; tutorial and workshop classwork counts for 50%. Students who fail the examination and coursework for ELL1013F may substitute it with the examination and coursework for ELL1016S with the permission of the course convenor.  
**NOTE:** This course may only be taken by students in the Non-Quantitative Extended Degree Programme [HB061 or HB062]. Credit will not be given for ELL1017H and the semester course passed in securing that credit, whether ELL1013F or ELL1016S.  

**ELL1032F INTRODUCTION TO LANGUAGE STUDIES** (was ELL119S)  
(NOTE: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term - please consult the Centre for Open Learning.)
First-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week plus tutorials.

**Convenor:** Mr S Bowerman.

**Entrance requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**
1. Introduction: description vs prescription; speech vs writing; competence vs performance.
2. Phonetics: the International Phonetic Alphabet; articulatory phonetics; classification of sounds; suprasegmentals.
4. Morphology and syntax: morphemes; word formation; constituents; phrase structure; elements of generative grammar.
5. Semantics and pragmatics: approaches to meaning; sense/reference; truth value; semantic features; speech acts; pragmatic rules.
6. Sociolinguistics: standard vs dialect; social and regional variation; gender; register.
7. Psychology of language: the mental lexicon; elements of neurolinguistics.
8. Historical linguistics: language families; introduction to language change; language contact.

**DP requirements:**
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at tutorials.

**Assessment:**
Tests and other written assignments set during the semester count for 50% of the final mark; one two-hour examination in June counts for 50%.

---

**ELL1033S  INTRODUCTION TO APPLIED LANGUAGE STUDIES (was ELL118F)**
First-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week plus tutorials.

**Convenor:** Professor R Mesthrie.

**Entrance requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**
1. Introduction: basic concepts and issues in Sociolinguistics
2. Regional Variation
3. Social Variation
4. Language change
5. Multilingualism
6. Language and Interaction
7. Gender and Language
8. Language Contact
9. Pidgins, Creoles and New Englishes
10. Language Planning and Policy
11. Language and Education
12. The Sociolinguistics of Sign Language.

**DP requirements:**
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at tutorials.

**Assessment:**
Tests and other written assignments set during the semester count for 50% of the final mark; one two-hour examination in October/November counts 50%.

---

**ELL2007F  AFRICAN LITERATURE AND LANGUAGE STUDIES I**
Second-year, first-semester course, 2 lectures and one double-period seminar per week.

**Convenor:** Professor K Sole.

**Entrance requirements:** ELL1013F and one other ELL first-year course, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
This course explores a range of South African texts, as well as topics in applied language studies. In addition to the lecture series, students choose from a range of seminars within the course.

DP requirements:
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at seminars.

Assessment:
Seminar classwork counts for 50% of the final mark; class test and one two-hour examination counts for the remaining 50%.

ELL2010S  AFRICAN LITERATURE AND LANGUAGE STUDIES II
Second-year, second-semester course, 2 lectures and one double seminar a week.
Convenor: Professor B Cooper.

Entrance requirements: ELL1013F and one other ELL first-year course, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

Course outline:
The lectures are organised around five themes, which will provide some basic theoretical tools, and four novels. The themes are: Discourse, Language, Orality, Gender and Hybridity. The novels are: Amos Tutuola, *The Palm-Wine Drinkard*; Ngugi wa Thiong'o, *Matigari*; Ayi Kwei Armah, *The Beautiful Ones Are Not Yet Born*; and Buchi Emecheta, *The Joys of Motherhood*.

DP requirements:
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% class attendance.

Assessment:
Seminar counts for 50% of the final mark; core course counts for the remaining 50% (core course examined by class test counting 33% and final two-hour examination counting 66%).

ELL2014F  SHAKESPEARE AND COMPANY
Second-year, first-semester course, 2 lectures and one double-period seminar per week.
Convenor: Dr N Distiller.

Entrance requirements: ELL1013F and one other ELL first-year course, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

Course outline:
This course introduces students to major figures of British literature from Chaucer to Milton, with special attention to Shakespeare. In addition to the lecture series, students choose from a range of seminars within the course.

DP requirements:
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at seminars.

Assessment:
Seminar classwork counts for 50% of the final mark; class test and one two-hour examination counts for the remaining 50%.

ELL2015S  ROMANCE TO REALISM
Second-year, second-semester course, 2 lectures and 1 double-period seminar per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor R Edgecombe.

Entrance requirements: ELL1013F and one other ELL first-year course, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

Course outline:
This course introduces students to the Romantic movement and traces the shift to Realism in the latter part of the 19th Century. In addition to the lecture series, students choose from a range of seminars within the course.
DP requirements:
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at seminars.
Assessment:
Seminar classwork counts for 50% of the final mark; class test and one two-hour examination counts for the remaining 50%.

ELL2018F  LINGUISTICS IIA
Second-year, first-semester course, 5 lectures per week plus tutorials.
Convenor: Mr S Bowerman.
Entrance requirements: This course is open to students who either (a) have successfully completed ELL1032F (was ELL119S) or (b) are deemed by Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of Section, to be equivalently qualified. Students wishing to be considered for admission to the course under (b) should arrange to see the Head of Section as early as possible.
Course outline:
The course consolidates and extends the work of the first year in linguistics and comprises a detailed study of (i) morphology, (ii) syntax, and two of the following: semantics, discourse analysis, psycholinguistics, language in South Africa.
DP requirements:
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at tutorials.
Assessment:
Four essays or other written assignments set during the semester count 12½% each (50%); one two-hour examination in June counts 50% of the final mark.

ELL2019S  LINGUISTICS IIB
Second-year, second-semester course, 5 lectures per week plus tutorials.
Convenor: Professor R Mesthrie.
Entrance requirements: This course is open to students who either (a) have successfully completed ELL1032F (was ELL119S) or (b) are deemed by Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of Section, to be equivalently qualified. Students wishing to be considered for admission to the course under (b) should arrange to see the Head of Section as early as possible.
Course outline:
This course consolidates and extends the work of the first year in linguistics and comprises a detailed study of (i) phonetics, (ii) phonology, and the remaining two of the following from ELL2018F: semantics, discourse analysis, psycholinguistics, language in South Africa.
DP requirements:
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at tutorials.
Assessment:
Four essays or other written assignments set during the semester count 12½% each (50%); one two-hour examination in October/November counts 50% of the final mark.

ELL3005F  MODERNISM
Third-year, first-semester course, 2 lectures, 1 double-period seminar per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor G Fincham.
Entrance requirements: Any two second-year ELL courses or at the discretion of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
This course examines major theories and texts of modernism, from Freud and Joyce to Virginia Woolf and others. Students choose from a range of seminars within the course.
DP requirements:
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at seminars.
Assessment:
Seminar classwork counts for 50% of the final mark; class test and one two-hour examination counts for the remaining 50%.

ELL3008S POSTMODERNISM
Third-year, second-semester course, 2 lectures, 1 double-period seminar per week.
Convenor: Professor J Higgins.
Entrance requirements: Any two second-year ELL courses, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
This course examines major theories and texts of postmodernism. Students choose from a range of seminars within the course.
DP requirements:
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at seminars.
Assessment:
Seminar classwork counts for 50% of the final mark; class test and one two-hour examination counts for the remaining 50%.

ELL3021F LINGUISTICS IIIA
Third-year, first-semester course, 5 lectures per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor N Love.
Entrance requirements: This course is open to students who either (a) have successfully completed ELL2018F and ELL2019S, or (b) successfully completed the now discontinued LIN200W, or (c) are deemed by Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of Section, to be equivalently qualified. Students wishing to be considered for admission to the course under (c) should arrange to see the Head of Section as early as possible.
Course outline:
This course introduces more advanced work in (i) phonological theory, (ii) syntactic theory, and two of the following: integrational linguistics, history of English, historical linguistics, theories of second language acquisition.
DP requirements:
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at classes.
Assessment:
Four essays or other written assignments set during the semester count 12½% each (50%); one two-hour examination in June counts 50% of the final mark.

ELL3022S LINGUISTICS IIIB
Third-year, second-semester course, 5 lectures per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor N Love.
Entrance requirements: This course is open to students who either (a) have successfully completed ELL3021F or (b) are deemed by Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of Section, to be equivalently qualified. Students wishing to be considered for admission to the course under (b) should arrange to see the Head of Section as early as possible.
Course outline:
This course consolidates and extends the work of ELL3021F in syntactic theory, includes a module on writing (history and semiotics, relationship between writing and speech), and the remaining two of the following from ELL3021F: integrational linguistics, history of English, historical linguistics, theories of second language acquisition.
DP requirements:
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at classes.
Assessment:
Four essays or other written assignments set during the semester count 12½% each (50%); one two-hour examination in October/November counts 50% of the final mark.

Other courses offered by the Linguistics Section:

**ELL2020H LANGUAGE STUDIES A**
Second-year, whole-year course, 3 lectures per week plus tutorials.
**Convenor:** Mr S Bowerman.
**Entrance requirements:** This course is open to students who either (a) have successfully completed ELL1032F (was ELL119S) or (b) are deemed by Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of Section, to be equivalently qualified. Students wishing to be considered for admission to the course under (b) should arrange to see the Head of Section as early as possible.
**Course outline:**
The course consolidates and extends the work of the first year in linguistics and comprises more advanced and detailed study of (i) semantics; (ii) language in South Africa; (iii) current theories in psycholinguistics; and (iv) discourse analysis.
**DP requirements:**
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at tutorials.
**Assessment:**
Four essays or other written assignments set during the year count 12½% each (50%); one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

**ELL3016H LANGUAGE STUDIES B**
Third-year, whole-year course, 3 lectures per week.
**Convenor:** Associate Professor N Love.
**Entrance requirements:** This course is open to students who either (a) have successfully completed ELL2020H, or (b) successfully completed the now discontinued LIN200W, or (c) are deemed by Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of Section, to be equivalently qualified. Students wishing to be considered for admission to the course under (c) should arrange to see the Head of Section as early as possible.
**Course outline:**
This course introduces more advanced work in (i) historical linguistics; (ii) theories of second-language acquisition; (iii) integrational linguistics, and (iv) history of English.
**DP requirements:**
All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at classes.
**Assessment:**
Four essays or other written assignments set during the year count 12½% each (50%); one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.
ENVIRONMENTAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL SCIENCE
(Faculty of Science)

The Department is housed in the Shell Environmental and Geographical Science Building, South Lane, telephone (021) 650-2874. The departmental abbreviation for Environmental and Geographical Science is EGS.

Field work
All students attending courses in Environmental and Geographical Science are required to take part in field work arranged during the year.

Requirements for a major in Environmental and Geographical Science (EGS):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First year</td>
<td>EGS1002S Human Geography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ONE of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ERT1000F Introduction to Earth and Environmental Sciences 1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ERT1002S Introduction to Earth and Environmental Sciences 1002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOTE: ERT1002S is a tutorial-based reinforcement of ERT1000F. Credit will not be given for both ERT1000F and ERT1002S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second year</td>
<td>EGS2010F Environmental Problems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ONE of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EGS2012S Physical Environmental Processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EGS2011S Cities of the South</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third year</td>
<td>Two of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EGS3013F Environmental Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EGS3012S Synoptic Climatology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EGS3014S Environmental Change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EGS3015S Urban Geography</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For ERT1000F: Matric Physical Science or Biology or Geography on Higher Grade, or an ‘A’ on Standard Grade
(ii) For ERT1002S: a DP in ERT1000F
(iii) For EGS1002S: Geography on Higher Grade or ERT1000F
(iv) For EGS2010F: ERT1000F or ERT1002S and EGS1002S
(v) For EGS2012S and EGS2011S: ERT1000F or ERT1002S
(vi) For EGS3013F: EGS2010F, EGS2012S or EGS2011S
(vii) For EGS3014S: EGS2010F or EGS2012S
(viii) For EGS3015S: EGS2010F or EGS2011S
(ix) For EGS3012S: ERT1000F or ERT1002S or any Mathematics first-year course or any Physics first-year course

NOTE: Students who fail any EGS course by a narrow margin may be eligible for further testing. Subminima apply.

Postgraduate entry requirements:
Students completing the Development and Social Transformation Programme:
All graduates of the Environmental and Geographical Studies Stream may be considered for admission to Honours in Environmental and Geographical Science provided that they have passed the following courses:
ERT1000F or ERT1002S; EGS1002S; EGS2010F; EGS2012S or EGS2011S; EGS3013F or EGS3014S or EGS3015S.

Students completing the Individual, Society and Environment Programme:
All graduates of the Individual, Society and Environment Programme may be considered for admission to Honours in Environmental and Geographical Science provided they have passed the following courses:
ERT1000F; EGS1002S; EGS2010F; EGS2011S; EGS3013F; EGS3015S.

**First-year courses:**

**ERT1000F  INTRODUCTION TO EARTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES 1000**

*This course is presented jointly by the Departments of Archaeology, Environmental and Geographical Science and Geological Sciences, but is administered by Geological Sciences.*

First-year, first-semester course.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor J Compton.

**Entrance requirements:** Matric Physical Science or Biology or Geography on Higher Grade, or an 'A' on Standard Grade. Preference will be given to students registered in the Science Faculty.

**Course outline:**
Structure and dynamics of the Earth; stratigraphy and geological history; climatology; surface processes and evolution of landscapes; biogeography; humans and the environment.

**Practicals:** One practical per week, Monday or Tuesday or Thursday or Friday, 14h00-17h00.

**Fieldwork:** Students are required to attend two half-day excursions in the Cape Peninsula.

**DP requirements:**
An average of at least 30% on all marked classwork and tests.

**Assessment:**
Marked classwork counts 24%; marked class tests count 16%; one 3-hour theory examination written in June counts 60%. A subminimum of 40% is required for practical and theory examination paper.

**ERT1002S  INTRODUCTION TO EARTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES 1002**

*Note: ERT1002S is a tutorial-based reinforcement of ERT1000F. Credit will not be given for both ERT1000F and ERT1002S.*

First-year, second-semester course.

**Convenor:** To be advised.

**Entrance requirements:** DP in ERT1000F.

**Course outline:**
As for ERT1000F.

**Tutorials:** One tutorial per week, Friday, 14h00-17h00.

**DP requirements:** As for ERT1000F.

**Assessment:**
Marked classwork counts 40%; one 3-hour theory examination written in November counts 45%; one 2-hour practical examination written in November counts 15%. Subminima of 40% are required in practical and theory examination papers.

**EGS1002S  HUMAN GEOGRAPHY**

First-year, second-semester course.

**Convenors:** Mrs S Butcher and Associate Professor R Ramutsindela.

**Entrance requirements:** Matric Geography on the Higher Grade, or ERT1000F.

**Course outline:**
The course comprises an introduction to global systems of human organisations, including
economic, social, political and cultural environments.

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday or Tuesday or Thursday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements:
Satisfactory completion of at least 80% of practical assignments and all class tests and essay work.

Assessment:
Essays, tests, practical assignments and tutorial work count 40%; one 3-hour theory examination written in November counts 45% (subminimum of 40% required); one 3-hour practical paper written in November counts 15%.

For second-year and subsequent courses, please refer to the Faculty of Science Handbook.
The Centre for Film and Media Studies incorporates the following:
- The undergraduate programme in Film and Media Production
- The majors in Film Studies and Media and Writing
- UCT-TV

The letter code for the Centre is FAM.

**Locations:**

**Central Administration:** Arts Building, University Avenue.

**UCT-TV:** Baxter Theatre, Main Road, Rondebosch.

**Contacts:**
Upper Campus and UCT-TV: ernestine.zincke@uct.ac.za
Website: www.cfms.uct.ac.za

**Associate Professor and Acting Director of the Centre:**
L G Marx, MA HDE (PG) Sec PhD Cape Town

**Distinguished Professor in Rhetoric:**
Ph-J Salazar, Maîtrise és Lettres, Maîtrise en Philosophie Sorbonne Maîtrise en Science Politique Panthéon-Sorbonne Dipl en Sémiologie EHESS, Doctorat en Anthropologie Culturelle René-Descartes-Sorbonne Ancien Elève de l'Ecole Normale Supérieure Paris Doctorat d'Etat ès-Lettres et Sciences Humaines Sorbonne Officier dans l'Ordre des Palmes Académiques

**Professor:**
I E Glenn, BA(Hons) Natal BPhil York MA PhD Pennsylvania

**Associate Professor:**
M P Botha, MA DPhil UOFS

**Senior Lecturers:**
A Haupt, MA UWC PhD Cape Town
M Walton, MA Cape Town

**Lecturers:**
T Bosch, PhD Ohio
W Chuma, MA Zimbabwe PhD Wits
M Ndlovu, MA KZN
I-M Rijsdijk, MA PhD Cape Town
E J van der Vliet, HDip Journ Rhodes MA Cape Town
M Watson-Seoighe, MA Bristol MA PhD Cape Town
A Wiesner, MA Cape Town

**Administrative Officer:**
Ms E Zincke, BSocSc Cape Town

**Administrative Assistant:**
Ms R Udemans, BA(Hons) UPE

**Senior Secretary:**
P Ndlela

**Technical Officers:**
S Francis
A Johannes
Majors and Programmes offered in 2008
The Centre for Film and Media Studies offers the following:

• FILM STUDIES MAJOR
• MEDIA AND WRITING MAJOR
• FILM AND MEDIA PRODUCTION PROGRAMME (see entry under Named Programmes)

Requirements for a major in Film Studies (FIL):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FAM1000S Analysing Film and TV (was ELL114S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAM2004F Introduction to the History of Cinema (was HST229F)*</td>
<td>FAM2001S Film Narrative (was ELL216F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAM3005F Film in Africa and South Africa</td>
<td>FAM3003S Advanced Film Studies (was ELL318F)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Students majoring in Film Studies cannot take this course as part of the major in Visual and Art History.

NOTE:
It is recommended that students take, in addition, HST3005S Film and History (see entry under Department of Historical Studies).

Prerequisites:
(i) For FAM2004F: FAM1000S
(ii) For FAM2001S: FAM1000S and FAM2004F (was HST229F), or at the discretion of the Head of Department
(iii) For FAM3005F: FAM1000S, FAM2004F (was HST229F) and FAM2001S, or at the discretion of the Head of Department
(iv) For FAM3003S: FAM1000S, FAM2004F (was HST229F), FAM2001S and FAM3005F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department

Requirements for a major in Media and Writing (MED):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAM1001F Media and Society (was ELL115S)</td>
<td>FAM1000S Analysing Film and TV (was ELL114S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAM2000F Writing and Editing in the Media (was ELL213F)</td>
<td>FAM2003S Media, Power and Culture (was SAN201S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAM3000F The Media in South Africa (was ELL319F)</td>
<td>FAM3001S Advanced Media Studies (was ELL320S)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For FAM2000F: FAM1000S and FAM1001F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department
(ii) For FAM2003S: FAM1000S, FAM1001F and FAM2000F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department
(iii) For FAM3000F: FAM2000F and FAM2003S (was SAN201S), or at the discretion of the Head of Department
(iv) For FAM3001S: FAM2000F, FAM2003S (was SAN201S) and FAM3000F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department
Course outlines:

FAM1000S ANALYSING FILM AND TELEVISION (was ELL114S)
(Note: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term – please consult the Centre for Open Learning.)
First-year, second-semester course, 2 lectures, screenings, weekly tutorials.
Convenor: Dr I-M Rijsdijk.
Entrance requirements: This course is only open to first-year Humanities students or by permission of the Head of Department. As entrance is limited to 400 students, preference is given to students accepted for the Film and Media Production programme or to students intending to major in Media and Writing or in Film Studies.
Course outline: This course offers a critical introduction to film and television. Its main aims are to provide students with the basic vocabulary for understanding the film-making process as well as narrative forms in both film and television. The course also considers key areas of film and television studies such as spectatorship, genre and realism, with examples drawn from both South Africa and abroad. Students are assessed in various forms of written examination from creative reviews and assignments (the storyboard or short script) to academic analysis.
DP requirements: All written and portfolio work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two tutorials will lose their DPs.
Assessment: Review exercise 10%, class test 10%, stylistic analysis 20%, storyboard/script 20% and a two-hour examination 40%.

FAM1001F MEDIA AND SOCIETY (was ELL115S)
(Note: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term – please consult the Centre for Open Learning.)
First-year, first-semester course, 2 lectures, screenings, weekly tutorials.
Convenors: Drs A Haupt and W Chuma.
Entrance requirements: This course is only open to first-year Humanities students or by permission of the Head of Department. As entrance is limited to 400 students, preference is given to students accepted for the Film and Media Production programme or to students intending to major in Media and Writing.
Course outline: This course examines the importance of the mass media in modern society. In questioning the roles that the media play in public life students will explore issues such as the legal, political, economic and ethical frameworks within which media industries operate, as well as considering the media's social responsibility with regard to representation and consumption. Emphasis will be placed on both image literacy and writing skills, with a brief introduction to media writing.
DP requirements: All written and portfolio work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two tutorials will lose their DPs.
Assessment: Examination is worth 40%, class exercises and participation 10%, class test 10% and there are two major assignments worth 20% each.

FAM1002H FOUNDATIONS IN MEDIA STUDIES
First-year, whole-year course, 2 lectures, screenings, weekly tutorial, weekly Convenor’s Seminar, weekly academic advisor’s meeting.
Convenors: Drs W Chuma and A Haupt.
Entrance requirements: This course is only open to students registered in the Humanities Faculty Non-Quantitative Extended Degree Programme (HB061 or HB062).
Course outline: This is a whole-year course incorporating FAM1001F as well as foundational skills and concepts
and supplementary material. It thus addresses essential skills and concepts for higher learning in the non-quantitative courses in the Humanities. Core issues include concepts of textuality (such as types and modes, representation, narrative and point of view), skills of critical analysis and academic literacy.

**DP requirements:** All written and portfolio work to be handed in by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two tutorials will lose their DPs.

**Assessment:** Examination is worth 40%, class exercises and participation 10%, class test 10% and there are two major assignments worth 20% each. Students who fail the examination and coursework of FAM1001F may substitute it with the examination and coursework for FAM1000S with the permission of the course convenor.

*NOTE: This course may only be taken by students in the Non-Quantitative Extended Degree Programme [HB061 or HB062]. Credit will not be given for FAM1002H and the course passed in securing that credit, whether FAM1001F or FAM1000S.*

---

**FAM2000F  WRITING AND EDITING IN THE MEDIA (was ELL213F)**

Second-year, first-semester course, 2 lectures and 1 double period or 2 single seminars per week. Every two weeks, a language lab session replaces the second lecture.

**Convenor:** Dr T Bosch.

**Entrance requirements:** FAM1000S and FAM1001F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**
This course aims to introduce students to conceptual and practical aspects of four key areas of media production: newspapers, features, radio and TV. We focus especially on developing good writing and editing skills. The core-course examines developments in South African print and broadcast media practice in the context of the media industry, social issues, and international trends. The seminars allow for a more detailed understanding of one topic in media practice, for example, feature journalism, writing for TV, news writing, sports journalism or advertising. Preference for places in seminars is given on academic criteria.

**DP requirements:** All written and portfolio work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two seminars will lose their DPs.

**Assessment:** Seminar 50%, editing exercises 10%, multimedia exercise 10%, and a two-hour examination 30%.

---

**FAM2001S  FILM NARRATIVE (was ELL216F)**

Second-year, second-semester course, 2 lectures per week, weekly screenings, tutorials and reading groups.

**Convenor:** Dr M Watson-Seoighe.

**Entrance requirements:** FAM1000S and FAM2004F (was HST229F), or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**
This course examines film narrative by tracing the relationship between genre, authorship, film form and style, spectatorship and cinema culture. Through a careful study of specific film genres, students will be introduced to a range of theories relevant to film narrative including gender, identity and representation, psychoanalysis, postcoloniality and realism. The course works towards an advanced understanding of how film narrative makes meaning in relation to textual and extra-textual elements.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at tutorials, reading groups and screenings are compulsory. All written work must be submitted by the stipulated dates.

**Assessment:** Tutorial/reading group work 10%; a multimedia exercise 15%; two essays 20% and 25%; and a two-hour examination 30%.
FAM2003S  MEDIA, POWER AND CULTURE (was SAN201S)
Second-year, second-semester course, 2 lectures per week, one weekly tutorial.
Convenor: Dr A Haupt.
Entrance requirements: FAM1000S, FAM1001F and FAM2000F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
The course covers topics such as persuasive communication and advertising; agenda setting; gatekeeping and watchdog journalism; the Chomsky model of media and power; semiotics; theories of televised realities; photojournalism; media ethics, law and policy; media development and popular/counter-culture.
DP requirements: All written and portfolio work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two tutorials will lose their DPs.
Assessment: Tutorial participation 10%; two critical essays 25% each; a two-hour examination 40%.
NOTE: Credit will not be given for both FAM2003S and SAN201S.

FAM2004F  INTRODUCTION TO THE HISTORY OF CINEMA (was HST229F)
Second-year, first-semester course, two lectures, a two-hour screening and one tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr M Watson-Seoighe.
Entrance requirements: FAM1000S.
Course outline:
This course will survey the history of cinema from the silent era through to contemporary film in a global context. Emphasis will be on German, French and Italian national cinemas and Hollywood in the first half of the 20th century, as well as the development of realism. In the survey, students will engage with works by some of the major creative figures in the history of film.
DP requirements: All written work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two tutorials will lose their DPs.
Assessment: Classwork will consist of two essays and two tutorial assignments totalling 60% and one two-hour examination worth 40%.

FAM3000F  THE MEDIA IN SOUTH AFRICA (was ELL319F)
Third-year, first-semester course, 2 lectures, screenings, and 1 double period or 2 single seminars per week.
Convenor: Mr A Wiesner.
Entrance requirements: The course is open to third-year Film and Media Production programme students in good standing or to students majoring in Media and Writing who have completed FAM2000F and FAM2003S (was SAN201S). Other students need the Head of Department's permission to enter.
Course outline:
The Constitution of South Africa enshrines the freedom of the press and other media, but students entering the world of media work will discover that their freedom of expression is, in practice, subject to a gridwork of constraints. Knowledge of these constraints is vitally important to anyone wanting a career in media and public communication. As such, this course maps out key regulatory, ethical and legal parameters circumscribing the freedom to speak in the public domain. The course deals with controversial issues surrounding media ethics, invasions of privacy, betrayal of sources, hate speech, obscenity, incitement, blasphemy, pornography, defamation, 'political correctness', codes of conduct, and the ways in which media constitute public spaces.
DP requirements: All written and portfolio work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two tutorials will lose their DPs.
Assessment: Seminar 50%; class essay and tests 20%; final two-hour examination 30%.
FAM3001S  ADVANCED MEDIA STUDIES (was ELL320S)
Third-year, second-semester course, 2 lectures and 2 tutorials per week.
Convenor: Mr M Ndlovu.
Entrance requirements: The course is open to third-year Film and Media Production students in good standing and to students who have completed FAM2000F, FAM3000F and FAM2003S (was SAN201S), or at the discretion of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
The course will comprise lecture series with supporting tutorials. The lecture course will examine traditions of media theory and media research, with a particular emphasis on the political economy approach to media and on claims by major contemporary theorists such as Castells, Habermas and Bourdieu. Lectures will also expose students to applied case studies by examining various South African media research projects undertaken by staff members. Tutorials will allow for discussion of key concepts and further readings.
DP requirements: All written and portfolio work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two seminar classes will lose their DPs.
Assessment: Written requirements for the lecture course: two essays 25% each, one two-hour examination 40%. Requirements for the seminar: at the lecturer's discretion 10%.

FAM3003S  ADVANCED FILM STUDIES (was ELL318F)
Third-year, second-semester course, 2 lectures and 1 double-period seminar per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor L G Marx.
Entrance requirements: FAM1000S, FAM2004F (was HST229F), FAM2001S and FAM3005F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
Students attend a core lecture series and choose from a selection of seminars. The course builds on knowledge acquired in the first- and second-year film courses. Students will engage intensively with the theory and analysis of film, including key areas such as film narrative and representation, modernism and film, filmic space, montage, feminist and psychoanalytic approaches, postcoloniality and intersections with cultural production more widely. Seminars may include a focus on the following: national cinema, Hollywood and Empire, African film, African American film, auteurism, fantasy and cinema, melodrama, the avant-garde and adaptation.
DP requirements: All written and portfolio work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two seminar classes will lose their DPs.
Assessment: Assessment for the lecture series will be based on classwork (30%) plus one two-hour examination (20%). The lecture series counts 50% and the seminar 50% of the final mark for the course.

FAM3005F  FILM IN AFRICA AND SOUTH AFRICA
Third-year, first-semester course, 2 lectures, screenings and weekly tutorials.
Convenor: Associate Professor M Botha.
Entrance requirements: FAM1000S, FAM2004F (was HST229F) and FAM2001S, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
The course examines contemporary issues in African cinemas, including cinema in South Africa during and after apartheid. The term "cinemas" is used as there is not a single African cinema, but a diversity of national film cultures on the continent. The course will address the complex interrelationship of history, aesthetics, politics and ideology in African cinemas, as well as the cultural, social and economic forces, which blend to form this vital part of world cinema.
DP requirements: Students who miss more than two tutorials will lose their DPs.
Assessment: Classwork will consist of two essays totalling 60% and there will be one two-hour examination worth 40%.
Film and Media Production Programme courses:

**FAM2002S** FOUNDATION PRODUCTION SKILLS (was ELL217S)

NOTE: Foundation Production Skills is restricted to Film and Media Production Programme students and is subject to a strict quota and specific admission requirements.

(This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term – consult the Centre for Open Learning.)

Second-year, second-semester course, weekly workshops.

Convenor: Dr T Bosch.

Entrance requirements: Completion of six semester courses in the immediate preceding year of study with passes in FAM1000S, FAM1001F, FAM2000F and FAM2004F (was HST229F) and an approved portfolio containing the following:

- An academic record averaging 65% for the courses completed in the first three semesters of the degree.
- Examples of creative work.
- A letter of motivation.

Deadline for all applications: 23 May of the second year of registration.

Course outline:
This course introduces students to essential technical, practical and conceptual skills required for media production. The unit is divided into four streams (screen, print, radio and multimedia). Students will move through the phases of production from researching, planning and scripting through to screening or creating a media text. These skills will be refined and developed in the third year Production course.

DP requirements: All written and portfolio work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. At least 90% attendance of classes.

Assessment: Assessment for each stream determined by stream convenor (refer to Course Outline).

**FAM3002F** PRODUCTION (was ELL315F)

Third-year, first-semester course, weekly workshops.

Convenor: Ms E van der Vliet.

Entrance requirements: FAM2002S Foundation Production Skills.

Course outline:
This course follows on from the FAM2002S Foundation Production Skills course and is limited to students who have successfully completed that course. Students continue to specialise in a particular stream (print, screen, radio or multimedia). Additional screenings, guest lectures and practical demos may also be scheduled. Students will consolidate and refine skills learnt in the second year course and will be expected to produce a number of finished media texts.

DP requirements: All written and portfolio work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. At least 90% attendance of classes.

Assessment: Assessment for each stream determined by stream convenor (refer to Course Outline).

**FAM3004S** SENIOR RESEARCH PROJECT (was ELL312S)

Third-year, second-semester course.

Convenor: Ms M Walton.

Entrance requirements: FAM2002S and FAM3002F.

Course outline:
The senior research project is designed and produced under supervision and should showcase what the student has acquired, both creatively and intellectually, during the course of the Film and Media Production programme.

DP requirements: All written and portfolio work must be submitted by the stipulated dates.

Assessment: Assessment for each stream determined by stream convenor. Planning documents and production project 70% and research essay with press pack 30%.
The departmental abbreviation for Geological Sciences is GEO.

Field excursions
All students attending courses in Geology are required to take part in the field excursions arranged for them during the year.

Course outlines:

ERT1000F  INTRODUCTION TO EARTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES 1000
This course is presented jointly by the Departments of Archaeology, Environmental and Geographical Science and Geological Sciences, but is administered by Geological Sciences.
First-year, first-semester course.
Convenor: Associate Professor J Compton.
Entrance requirements: Matric Physical Science or Biology or Geography on Higher Grade, or an 'A' on Standard Grade. Preference will be given to students registered in the Science Faculty.
Course outline:
Structure and dynamics of the Earth; stratigraphy and geological history; climatology; surface processes and evolution of landscapes; biogeography; humans and the environment.
Practicals: One practical per week, Monday or Tuesday or Thursday or Friday, 14h00-17h00.
Fieldwork: Students are required to attend three half-day excursions in the Cape Peninsula.
DP requirements:
An average of at least 30% on all marked classwork and tests.
Assessment:
Marked classwork counts 16%; marked class tests count 24%; one 3-hour theory examination written in June counts 60%. A subminimum of 40% is required for practical and theory examination paper.

GEO1006S  INTRODUCTION TO MINERALS, ROCKS AND STRUCTURE
First-year, second-semester course.
Convenor: Associate Professor C Harris.
Entrance requirements: A minimum of 45% in ERT1000F or ERT1002S.
Course outline:
Crystals and minerals; Igneous and metamorphic rocks; Structural geology; Mineral deposits and economic geology; Palaeontology.
Practicals: One practical per week, Thursday, 14h00-17h00.
Fieldwork: Students are required to attend a one-day excursion in the Cape Peninsula, and a four-day excursion through the southwestern Cape during the September vacation.
DP requirements:
An average of at least 30% in all marked classwork and tests. Compulsory attendance at one tutorial session per week for all students who fail any class test, until such time as a subsequent test is passed.
Assessment:
Class tests count 35%; field reports count 15%; one 2-hour theory examination written in November counts 50%. Subminimum of 40% is required in theory examination paper.
GEO1007S  EARTH STEWARDSHIP
This is a cross-disciplinary course intended for students of all faculties. Students who would like to learn more about how the Earth works and how Earth’s resources affect our lives and our future socio-economic welfare are encouraged to attend.
First-year, second-semester course.
Convenor: Professor M J de Wit.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
The course will be divided into three sections: (1) Creating a habitable planet and analysing how Earth works as a gigantic recycling machine; (2) Managing a habitable planet and evaluating Earth as a service industry; (3) Developing new, robust contracts between (geo)science and society.
Practicals: By arrangement on the website.
DP requirements:
An aggregate of at least 30% for term assignments, attendance on field trip.
Assessment:
Term assignments count 40%; a 3-hour examination in November counts 60%.

For second-year and subsequent courses, please refer to the Faculty of Science Handbook.
THE DEPARTMENT OF HISTORY

History Studies

The Department is housed in the Beattie Building, University Avenue, on Upper Campus. The letter code for the Department is HST.

Professor and Head of Department:
J V Bickford-Smith, MA PhD Cantab

Honorary Professor:
S E Marks, BA Cape Town PhD Lond Hon DLitt Cape Town Hon DSocSc Natal

Professors:
M A P Godby, BA Trinity College Dublin MA Birmingham PhD Witwatersrand
W R Nasson, BA(Hons) Hull MA York PhD Cantab
H Phillips, BA(Hons) Cape Town MA Lond PhD Cape Town
C C Saunders, BA(Hons) Cape Town MA DPhil Oxon
M Shain, MA Unisa STD Cape Town MA Leeds PhD Cape Town
N A Worden, MA PhD Cantab

Associate Professors:
M Adhikari, BA(Hons) MA PhD Cape Town
A Mager, BA(Hons) PhD Cape Town
R Mendelsohn, BA(Hons) Cape Town PhD Witwatersrand
N G Penn, BA(Hons) Witwatersrand PhD Cape Town
L van Sittert, BA(Hons) PhD Cape Town

Senior Lecturers:
S Field, MSocSc Cape Town PhD Essex
S Jeppie, BA(Hons) MA Cape Town PhD Princeton
L van der Watt, BA Pretoria BA(Hons) MA Cape Town PhD SUNY

Lecturers:
M Mulaudzi, BA Oberlin College PhD Minnesota
A Tietze, MA Oxon MA Essex

Director, Centre for Popular Memory:
S Field, MSocSc Cape Town PhD Essex

Administrator/Schools Liaison:
N Allie

Audio-Visual Archivist:
R Meyer, BFA Wits

Administrative Assistant:
Mrs B Beneke

Senior Secretary:
Mrs I van Schalkwyk
# Requirements for a major in History (HIS):

**First year**
- HST1008S Peoples, Politics and Place: The Southern World since c.1500 (was HST103S and HST106F)

**ONE of the following:**
- HST1002F Africa in World History
- HST1004F The New Millennium in Historical Perspective
- HST1005F The Making of the Modern World Economy

**Second year**

**TWO of the following:**
- HST2003F Making of the Modern World to 1945 (*not offered in 2008*)
- HST2021F The Making of the Modern Middle East
- HST2027S Origins of the Contemporary World
- HST2031S Southern Africa in the Twentieth Century
- HST2032F Southern Africa to 1900
- HST2033F Africa: the Making of a Continent to 1800
- HST2034S Africa: Colonial and Post-Colonial Encounters
- HST2035S Gender and History

**Third year**
- HST3022H Historical Approaches

**ONE of the following:**
- HST3005S Film and History
- HST3024F War and Society
- HST3025F Liberation in Southern Africa
- HST3026S Medicine in the Making of Modern South Africa
- HST3029F Environmental History
- HST3037S Memory, Identity and History (*not offered in 2008*)

**NOTE:**

*Students may not major in both History and Economic History.*

---

**Prerequisites:**
For **HST3022H**: HST1008S, and either HST1002F, HST1004F or HST1005F, and any two 2000-level HST major courses, or by permission of the Head of Department.

# Requirements for a major in Visual and Art History (VAH):

**First year**

**ONE of the following:**
- HST1009S Contemporary Art and Visual Culture
- FIN1003H World Art Overview*
- FIN1004S Streams of Continental Art*

**Second year**
- HST2030S Visual Culture: Perception and Communication

**ONE of the following:**
- HST2036F Sacred Art: Image, Visual Narrative and Performance
- FAM2004F Introduction to the History of Cinema (was HST229F)**

**Third year**
- HST3002F Art and Theory
- HST3006S Photography in South Africa: 1860 to the Present

*See entry under 1000-level courses below.

**See entry under Centre for Film and Media Studies. This course cannot be taken by students who are also majoring in Film Studies.**
Prerequisites:
For **HST3002F**: HST1009S or FIN1003H or FIN1004S, and HST2036F or FAM2004F, and HST2030S, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Requirements for a major in Economic History (ECH):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HST1005F Making of the Modern World Economy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HST2028F Twentieth Century Industrialisation</td>
<td>HST2031S Southern Africa in the Twentieth Century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HST3038F Economies of Feasts and Economies of Famine</td>
<td>HST3039H Economic History Research Project</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:**
Students may not major in both Economic History and History.

Prerequisites:
For **HST3038F** and **HST3039H**: HST1005F, HST2028F, and HST2031S.

**Requirements for a major in Jewish Civilisation (JWC):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First year</th>
<th>Second year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HEB1055S Themes in Jewish Civilisation: 1492 to Modernity <em>(not offered after 2006)</em></td>
<td>TWO of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEB2063F The Holocaust and Literary Responses <em>(no longer offered)</em></td>
<td>HEB2067F Great Books of Jewish Literature <em>(no longer offered)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HST2008S Themes in Modern Jewish History <em>(not offered in 2008)</em></td>
<td>HST2011S The Holocaust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HST2019F A History of Antisemitism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HST3040W Contemporary Jewish Life and Thought <em>(on offer until the end of 2008)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
For **HST3040W**: HEB1055S or an appropriate course approved by the Head of Department, plus two 2000-level Jewish Civilisation courses in a chosen field of specialisation.

**Course outlines:**

**1000-level courses**

**FIN1003H**  WORLD ART OVERVIEW

*NOTE: This course is taught on Hiddingh Campus.*

First-year, first-semester course, three lectures per week.

**Convenor:** A Lamprecht.

**Course outline:**
This course looks at the emergence and development of art over time and geographical space. Thematically based, it presents an overview of human art production from, amongst others, Upper Palaeolithic Africa, Byzantium, Classical Greece, 19th and 20th century West Africa, Renaissance Europe, Ancient and Medieval Asia as well as comparative material from 20th and 21st century global production. The primary focus is the development of skills to analyse and contextualise
artworks.

**DP requirements:**
At least 70% attendance at tutorials and satisfactory completion of 2 assignments per semester.

**Assessment:**
Semester coursework 50%, 2-hour examination 50%.

---

**FIN1004S  STREAMS OF CONTINENTAL ART**

*NOTE: This course is taught on Hiddingh Campus.*

First-year, second-semester course, three lectures per week.

**Convenor:** A Lamprecht.

**Course outline:**
This course looks at contemporary trends in the context of the globalisation of art. It focuses attention on the big international biennials, on the development of curatorship as a central component in the exhibiting of art, and in the shifts from the centre, liberating the margins and overturning the traditional dominance of Western art.

**DP requirements:**
At least 70% attendance at tutorials and satisfactory completion of 2 assignments per semester.

**Assessment:**
Semester coursework 50%, 2-hour examination 50%.

---

**HST1002F  AFRICA IN WORLD HISTORY**

*(NOTE: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term - please consult the Centre for Open Learning.)*

First-semester course, 3 lectures per week and at least 8 tutorials.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor M Adhikari.

**Entrance requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**
This course provides an introductory survey of the history of the continent, set in a world context, with special reference to the past century, the age of imperialism, decolonisation and nationalisms. Africa's recent history and contemporary developments are explored through relating these to themes in world history.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:**
There will be one two-hour examination at the end of the semester. The marks obtained in the final examination count 50% towards the final mark; coursework counts for 50% of the final mark.

---

**HST1004F  THE NEW MILLENNIUM IN HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE**

First-semester course, 3 lectures per week and at least 8 tutorials.

**Convenor:** Professor H Phillips.

**Entrance requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**
Dominant features of the world as it begins the new millennium - such as globalisation, a spiralling population, environmental degradation, accelerating urbanisation, the co-existence of great wealth and mass poverty, ethnic conflict, the ascendency of the USA - have historical roots going back centuries. This course will put these features into historical context, examining how and why they arose and developed. In short, the course seeks to assist comprehension of the world in the new millennium.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:**
There will be one two-hour examination at the end of the semester. The marks obtained in the final
examination count 50% towards the final mark; coursework counts for 50% of the final mark.

**HST1005F THE MAKING OF THE MODERN WORLD ECONOMY**

First-semester course, 3 lectures per week and at least 8 tutorials.

**Convenor:** Professor W R Nasson.

**Entrance requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**
This course examines key aspects of the way in which the modern world economy was created. The main focus is on the expansion of the world capitalist system through the 20th century, to the global integration of the present. Drawing upon country case studies, the course will explore such themes as the impact of the World Wars, the changing nature of work, labour experience and labour movements, and relations between Third World and advanced countries. The course will draw on a range of historical sources.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:**
There will be one two-hour examination at the end of the semester. The marks obtained in the final examination count 50% towards the final mark; coursework counts for 50% of the final mark.

**HST1008S PEOPLES, POLITICS AND PLACE: THE SOUTHERN WORLD SINCE c.1500 (was HST103S and HST106F)**

Second-semester course, 3 lectures per week and at least 8 tutorials.

**Convenor:** Professor N Worden.

**Entrance requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**
This course examines key themes in the history of the Southern world (Latin America, Australasia, South Asia and Southern Africa) since the sixteenth century. It focuses on themes such as the possession and contestation of land, the nature of settler and indigenous encounters, protest movements, migration, and constructions of nationalism. The course also introduces some of the latest ways in which historians have approached the past, such as analysis of discourse, the new cultural history, gender, the use of literature and film, and heritage and identity studies. It thus provides the skills, concepts and approaches needed for further studies in the historical disciplines.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:**
There will be one two-hour examination at the end of the semester. The marks obtained in the final examination count 50% towards the final mark; coursework counts for 50% of the final mark.

**HST1009S CONTEMPORARY ART AND VISUAL CULTURE**

Second-semester course, 3 lectures per week and at least 8 tutorials.

**Convenor:** To be advised.

**Entrance requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**
This course introduces students to the general field of visual culture by surveying the history of modern and contemporary art through selected artists and episodes. Central to this exploration stands an awareness of Africa and the role its visual culture has played in the development of modern art. Preference will be given to those movements and figures that have proved to be indispensable to our understanding of the visual culture around us and specifically that which we find in contemporary museums and art exhibitions. While our starting point is in the early 20th century, we focus on contemporary art production and the course will include and require visits to local galleries and museums.

**DP requirements:** None.
Assessment:
There will be one two-hour examination at the end of the semester. The marks obtained in the final examination count 50% towards the final mark; coursework counts for 50% of the final mark.

2000-level courses

HST2003F  THE MAKING OF THE MODERN WORLD TO 1945  
(Not offered in 2008)

HST2008S  THEMES IN MODERN JEWISH HISTORY  
(Not offered in 2008)

HST2011S  THE HOLOCAUST  
Second-semester course, three lectures per week and one tutorial per fortnight.  
Convenor: Professor M Shain.  
Entrance requirements: At least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.  
Course outline: 
The course examines selected themes relating to the Holocaust. These include the evolution of Nazi Jewish policy, public opinion in Nazi Europe, the war against the Jews, life in the ghettos, the final solution, Jewish resistance, the question of bystanders, Jewish theodicy.  
DP requirements: None.  
Assessment: 
Classwork counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.

HST2019F  A HISTORY OF ANTISEMITISM  
First-semester course, three lectures per week and one tutorial per fortnight.  
Convenor: Professor M Shain.  
Entrance requirements: At least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.  
Course outline: 
The course explores definitions of antisemitism within the context of theories of racism, prejudice and stereotyping. It then examines selected themes in the history of antisemitism, including pagan hostility, anti-Judaism, secular antisemitism, antisemitism in the Muslim world and antisemitism in the contemporary world.  
DP requirements: None.  
Assessment: 
Classwork counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.

HST2021F  THE MAKING OF THE MODERN MIDDLE EAST  
First-semester course, up to 3 lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials.  
Convenor: Dr S Jeppie.  
Entrance requirements: At least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.  
Course outline: 
The course examines the key transformations in the Middle East and North Africa from the late 18th century to the Gulf Wars. It begins with the decline of the Ottoman Empire, then looks at...
interactions between the West and the Middle East and contests over modernity in the 19th and 20th centuries. It also examines the integration of the region into the world economy; the rise of Arab nationalism and the problem of the nation state; the question of Palestine; the politics of oil; the rise of US hegemony after World War II.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:**

Classwork counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.

---

**HST2027S   ORIGINS OF THE CONTEMPORARY WORLD**

Second-semester course, up to 3 lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials.

**Convenor:** Professor H Phillips.

**Entrance requirements:** At least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course examines the origins of the contemporary world, focusing on issues of global importance since 1945. These will include such topics as the Cold War; the rise and fall of Communist Eastern Europe; the resurgence of Germany; the growth of the European Union; American global power; decolonisation and neo-colonialism; the Middle East and the politics of oil; the Vietnam War and its aftermath; and the rise of China.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:**

Classwork counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.

---

**HST2028F   TWENTIETH CENTURY INDUSTRIALISATION**

First-semester course, up to three lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor A Mager.

**Entrance requirements:** At least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course explores the historical experience of industrialisation through the 20th century, drawing on case studies from both the advanced industrial world and from the Third World. Particular attention will be paid to the role of the state in economic and social development, and to the relationship between industrialisation and modern war.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:**

Classwork counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.

---

**HST2030S   VISUAL CULTURE: PERCEPTION AND COMMUNICATION**

Second-semester course, up to 3 lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials.

**Convenor:** To be advised.

**Entrance requirements:** At least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course offers the tools for an art-historical study of visual artefacts. Focusing on two visual cultures of the past, it examines art, design and artefacts from multiple perspectives.

**DP requirements:** None.
Assessment:
Classwork counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.

HST2031S  SOUTHERN AFRICA IN THE TWENTIETH CENTURY
Second-semester course, up to 3 lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials.
Convenor: Associate Professor M Adhikari.
Enterance requirements: At least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
Themes to be considered include: the 'mineral revolution'; the South African War and Reconstruction; rural conditions, migrancy and urbanisation; formation of ethnicities; class conflict and political struggle after Union; Afrikaner nationalism and black politics; resistance and repression in the 1950s and after; the collapse of apartheid and post-apartheid developments.
DP requirements: None.
Assessment:
Classwork counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.
NOTE: Credit will not be given for both HIS205S and HST2031S.

HST2032F  SOUTHERN AFRICA TO 1900
First-semester course, up to 3 lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials.
Convenor: Associate Professor N Penn.
Enterance requirements: At least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
Outline of Southern African history to 1900. This course focuses on African societies; the frontier; slavery; British imperialism; African dispossession and other aspects of pre-industrial Southern African History.
DP requirements: None.
Assessment:
Classwork counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.
NOTE: Credit will not be given for both HIS202F and HST2032F.

HST2033F  AFRICA: THE MAKING OF A CONTINENT TO 1800
First-semester course, up to 3 lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials.
Convenor: Dr M Mulaudzi.
Enterance requirements: At least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
The course deals with the peoples and processes that shaped Africa from earliest times to the eve of colonialism. To this end it deals with themes such as human origins, the great civilisations of the Nile Valley, state formation, spirits and spirituality, local and long-distance trade and slavery and the slave trade.
DP requirements: None.
Assessment:
Classwork counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.
HST2034S  AFRICA: COLONIAL AND POST-COLONIAL ENCOUNTERS  
Second-semester course, 3 lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials. 
Convenor: Dr S Jeppie.  
Entrance requirements: At least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.  
Course outline:  
This course is an examination of the major political and economic trends in African history since 1800. It offers an interpretation of African history and the sources of the present predicament. In particular we study the impact of informal and formal empire in the nineteenth century, the legacy of late colonialism, the rise and problems of resistance and nationalism, the immediate challenges of the independent states (bureaucracy and democracy) and the more recent challenges such as debt and globalisation, on the continent. Extensive use is made of specific case studies and examples are not limited to Anglophone (ie English-speaking) Africa.  
DP requirements: None.  
Assessment:  
Classwork counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.  

HST2035S  GENDER AND HISTORY  
Second-semester course, 3 lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials.  
Convenor: Associate Professor A Mager.  
Entrance requirements: At least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.  
Course outline:  
The history of most societies is the history of ungendered men. This course sets out to explore how representations of the past change when gender relations, women, masculinities and femininities are used as categories of historical analysis. It examines specific issues in the history of Europe, Africa and the Americas from a gendered perspective. The course also explores key debates in feminist historiography.  
DP requirements: None.  
Assessment:  
Classwork counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.  

HST2036F  SACRED ART: IMAGE, VISUAL NARRATIVE AND PERFORMANCE  
(was HST204F)  
First-semester course, up to 3 lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials.  
Convenor: Professor M A P Godby.  
Entrance requirements: At least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.  
Course outline:  
The four parts of the course examine, in turn, the representation of the Christian story in film, Early Renaissance Italian art, manifestations of a religious impulse in contemporary South African art, and iconic and performative aspects of religious art in West Africa.  
DP requirements: None.  
Assessment:  
Classwork counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.
3000-level courses

HST3002F  ART AND THEORY
First-semester course, up to 3 lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials.
Convenor: Ms A Tietze.
Entrance requirements: HST1009S or FIN1003H or FIN1004S, and HST2036F or FAM2004F, and HST2030S, or by permission of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
Approaches to the theoretical issues raised by visual artefacts. In particular, this course focuses on the way in which histories of art have been constructed in the 20th century, and how these histories relate to the field of art criticism and museum practice.
DP requirements: None.
Assessment:
Class and project work counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.

HST3005S  FILM AND HISTORY
Second-semester course, up to 3 lectures and one double-period screening per week, at least 8 tutorials.
Convenor: Professor V Bickford-Smith.
Entrance requirements: At least 2 courses at 1000-level and 2 courses at 2000-level in historical, cultural studies or social science offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
Through the study of a range of feature films and documentaries, this interdisciplinary course explores the rich debates on the filmic representations of the past. Case studies include the war film genre, Hitler on film, Holocaust representations, representations of the South African liberation struggle and modern African conflicts on film.
DP requirements: None.
Assessment:
Class and project work counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.

HST3006S  PHOTOGRAPHY IN SOUTH AFRICA: 1860 TO THE PRESENT
Second-semester course, up to 3 lectures per week and 8 tutorials over the semester.
Convenor: Professor M A P Godby.
Entrance requirements: At least 2 courses at 1000-level and 2 courses at 2000-level in historical, cultural studies or social science offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department. Photography students at the Michaelis School of Fine Art may take this course in their second year of study.
Course outline:
The course examines major moments and themes in the history of photography in South Africa over the past one hundred and forty years. Topics covered include Photography and Exploration, Missionary Photography, Photography and Anthropology, Portrait Photography, Fine Art Photography, Struggle Photography, and Popular Photography. Special notice will be made of major South African photographers such as A M Duggan Cronin, Ernest Cole and David Goldblatt. Where appropriate, reference will be made to developments in Africa and elsewhere in the world. An important feature of the course is the regular presentation by distinguished local photographers on their work.
DP requirements: None.
Assessment:
Class and project work counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.

HST3022H HISTORICAL APPROACHES
First- and second-semester course, up to 2 lectures per week and at least 6 tutorials in first semester, and regular meetings with supervisor in second semester.
Convenor: Professor N Worden.
Entrance requirements: HST1008S, and either HST1002F, HST1004F or HST1005F, and any two 2000-level HST major courses, or by permission of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
In the first semester the course explores the changing ways in which history has been conceived of, researched and written both internationally and in South Africa. It examines issues in historical methodology and key developments in recent historical writing and practice, including heritage studies. The second semester involves practical work in research and the production of a research article on a specialised historical topic. Students signing up for the Convict Labour Project will be required to participate in one field trip.
DP requirements: None.
Assessment:
Coursework counts for 25%; one two-hour examination in June counts for 25%; research project submitted in October counts for the remaining 50%.
Note: This course is offered for the major in History. Students may not obtain credit for this course and for any of HIS/HST322F, HST331F, HST332S, or HST336H.

HST3024F WAR AND SOCIETY
First-semester course, up to 3 lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials.
Convenor: Professor W R Nasson.
Entrance requirements: At least 2 courses at 1000-level and 2 courses at 2000-level in historical, cultural studies or social science offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
The course examines the significance and role of wars and warfare in historical change. Its approach is the 'new' history of war, in which standard diplomatic, political and military emphases in the study of conflict are joined by the insights of social and cultural history. The course examines through selected case studies the impact of armed conflict on social, economic and cultural life and the manner in which social, technological and other factors have shaped the conduct of warfare. The course will examine both modern or 'total' wars, such as those of the 20th century, and earlier wars, such as colonial warfare in Africa. It draws on written sources, oral history, documentary film, literary and artistic material.
DP requirements: None.
Assessment:
Class and project work counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.

HST3025F LIBERATION IN SOUTHERN AFRICA
First-semester course, up to 3 lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials.
Convenor: Professor C Saunders.
Entrance requirements: At least 2 courses at 1000-level and 2 courses at 2000-level in historical, cultural studies or social science offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
This course explores aspects of the history of liberation struggles in a number of countries in southern Africa in the late 20th century. Who was involved in these struggles? What forms of struggle were employed? What were the goals and strategies of the various liberation movements? What did they achieve? What was the outcome of the various liberation struggles? The decolonisation of Zimbabwe and Namibia and the transition to democracy in South Africa will be examined in some depth, and other liberation struggles in the region may also be considered and compared.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:**
Class and project work counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.

---

**HST3026S MEDICINE IN THE MAKING OF MODERN SOUTH AFRICA**
Second-semester course, up to 3 lectures per week, at least 8 tutorials.

**Convenor:** Professor H Phillips.

**Course outline:** This course examines how biomedicine was developed in modern Europe and how, and with what effect, it was put into practice in South Africa from late colonial times to the present. Among the topics to be investigated are: the rise of biomedicine and its impact on other forms of therapy; the growth of structures and professions for its implementation, its fluctuating impact on endemic and epidemic disease and its harnessing to wider state policies. Ultimately, the course seeks to help students to comprehend how the current state of health, disease and medicine in South Africa arose and to place this in a wider world context.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:**
Class and project work counts for 50% of the final mark, and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.

---

**HST3029F ENVIRONMENTAL HISTORY**
(Not offered in 2008)

**HST3037S MEMORY, IDENTITY AND HISTORY**
(Not offered in 2008)

**HST3038F ECONOMIES OF FEASTS AND ECONOMIES OF FAMINE: HISTORIOGRAPHIES OF ECONOMIC HISTORY**
First-semester course, up to 3 lectures per week and at least 8 double-period seminars.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor A Mager.

**Entrance requirements:** For students completing the major in Economic History, ALL of the following are required: HST1005F, HST2028F, HST2031S. For students taking the course as an elective, at least ONE of the following courses is required: HST1005F, HST2028F, HST2031S.

**Course outline:** This course is required for the completion of the major in Economic History. It may also be taken as an elective by students who wish to deepen their understanding of issues in Economic History. The course covers key aspects of the discipline of Economic History through examining approaches to struggling and successful economies, past and present, in Europe, Africa and the Americas.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:**
Class and project work count for 50% of the final mark and one two-hour examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for the remaining 50%.
HST3039H  ECONOMIC HISTORY RESEARCH PROJECT
Convenor: Associate Professor A Mager.
Entrance requirements: Registration for HST3038F.
Course outline:
The research project constitutes the capping requirement for the major in Economic History. Working under close supervision, students undertake primary research in a particular area of economic history, engage with the relevant literature and produce a well-structured research document along the lines of a journal article.
DP requirements: None.
Assessment:
The research project submitted in October counts for 100% of the mark.

HST3040W  CONTEMPORARY JEWISH LIFE AND THOUGHT
Third-year, whole-year course, one extended seminar per week.
Convenor: Professor M Shain.
Entrance requirements: HEB1055S, plus two 2000-level Jewish Civilisation courses, or an approved course by permission of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
The course explores, in depth, selected themes in contemporary Jewish society including the sociology of Jewry, modern Jewish thought, and South African Jewry. It includes a research paper in the student's chosen speciality.
DP requirements: None.
Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts 50%; essays and tests count 25%; the research paper counts 25% towards the final mark.
The Centre for Information Literacy / Department of Information and Library Studies is housed on Level 4 of Hoerikwaggo (Building 27) on the Upper Campus.  
General Enquiries: (021) 650-3090  
Internet: cil@ched.uct.ac.za  
Web home page: http://www.ched.uct.ac.za/cil/dils  
The code for all courses offered in the Department is LIS.

**Associate Professor and Head of Department:**

M C Nassimbeni, BA(Hons) *Rhodes* HDipLib UED PhD *Cape Town*

**Professor:**

P G Underwood, MBA *Cranfield* FCLIP MIInfSc

**Associate Professor:**

K de Jager, BA(Hons) MA HDipLib *Rhodes* MBibl PhD *Cape Town*

**Senior Lecturer:**

J G Smith, BSc *Stell* HDipLib MA PhD *Cape Town* FSAILIS

**Course outline:**

**LIS1003S INFORMATION SOCIETY: TOOLS AND SKILLS**

*NOTE: A maximum of 90 students will be admitted to this course.*

First-year, second-semester course, 2 lectures and 2 tutorials/practicals per week.  
**Convenor:** Associate Professor M C Nassimbeni.  
**Entrance requirements:** None.  
**Course outline:**

This course provides an introduction to the information age and its impact on society. Issues that will be covered include the nature, growth and copyright issues as well as the organisation, presentation and evaluation of information. Practical sessions will deal with searching and retrieving information from printed and electronic sources.  
**Practicals:** Tuesdays - Theory (7th and 8th period); Thursdays - Practicals (7th and 8th period).  
**DP requirements:**

Attendance at practicals/tutorials; a subminimum of 40% for written work.  
**Assessment:**

Practical work counts 50% towards the final mark; one two-hour examination in November counts 50%.
INFORMATION SYSTEMS
(Faculty of Commerce)

Course outline:

INF1002S INFORMATION SYSTEMS I
This is a half-course offered in the second semester for students registered for the BCom and BBusSc degrees, and for students in certain other approved programmes. 4 lectures per week, one tutorial, one session in computer laboratory and projects as required.

Entrance requirements:
Admission for Humanities students is restricted to those registered for the Philosophy, Politics and Economics and the Labour, Organisational Psychology and Human Resource Management Programmes.
A pass in Matriculation Mathematics with at least an E symbol on Higher Grade or a B symbol on Standard Grade is recommended.

Course outline:
This course provides a business perspective of information systems, and stresses how information systems can be used to improve the planning and running of businesses. The course introduces students to the theoretical and practical basics of business and information systems. It investigates information system concepts such as data, input, processing, output, and information technology such as hardware, software and networks. It investigates the use of information technology and communication technology as well as their convergence (coming together) to support business information systems. The nature and value of information as well as the impact of Internet technology on organisations and society are also considered.

DP requirements:
To successfully complete this course, students must achieve an overall mark of at least 50% AND this must include an overall mark of at least 50% in the final examinations. In the case of an overall mark of 50% or over with the exams having been failed, the student will be awarded a grade of ‘Fail’.

Assessment: Coursework counts for 50%, final examination in October/November counts for 50%.
SCHOOL OF LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES

The letter code for all courses offered in the School is SLL.
The School can be contacted by email at suzanne.beele@uct.ac.za.

The School comprises the following Sections:

AFRICAN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES
AFRIKAANS
ARABIC LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE
CLASSICS (comprising Greek, Latin and Classical Culture)
FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE
GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE
HEBREW LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE
ITALIAN STUDIES
PORTUGUESE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE
SPANISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

Associate Professor and Director of the School:
C E Chandler, BA(Hons) MA PhD Cape Town

Administrative Officer:
Mrs S Beele

A. Language and Literature courses and majors
Students are welcome to register for any language taught by the School, whether or not they have studied the language before. The School offers introductory courses in each of its languages. Furthermore the School welcomes not only those who intend to specialise in any of its languages, but also those who would like to get an introduction to a language and/or are not able to fit more than one or two courses into their degree programmes. A student who, within the preceding five years, has passed a relevant language at Matric level with at least a C symbol (or a course recognised as equivalent) will not be admitted to the introductory course of that language for degree purposes, unless the Head of Section is satisfied that for some special reason he/she is not able to perform the work of the second-year first-semester course.

Students can major in any one or more of the following languages: Afrikaans, French, German, Italian, Spanish and Xhosa (majors in Latin and Greek are subsumed within Classical Studies). A major in a language gives admission to the Honours course in that language and also meets the requirement for anyone wishing to offer a language as a teaching subject after completion of the Postgraduate Certificate in Education course.

B. Cultural Studies
The School offers courses in the fields of cultural, literary, film and historical studies which can comprise a major in Classical Studies and can be taken as electives. Some combinations of these courses qualify the student for admission into Honours courses (see under Classics for the requirements for Honours in Ancient History, and Greek and Roman Literature and Thought). These undergraduate courses are taught and examined in English, but where a student wishes to take a course as part of a language major the School will set assignments and examination questions in the relevant language.

Returning students who will be completing their degree programmes in terms of the pre-1999 rules should consult the Director of the School or Section Head if there is any uncertainty about the linkage between the new course codes and the old codes.
African Languages and Literatures Section

The Section of African Languages and Literatures is housed in the Arts Building, located on University Avenue.

Professor and Head of Section:
S C Satyo, BA(Hons) UED Fort Hare MA DLitt et Phil Unisa

Associate Professor:
D S Gxilishe, BA(Hons) UED Fort Hare MEd (Applied Linguistics) Columbia MA DLitt Stell

Senior Lecturer:
M A B Nyamende, BA(Hons)(English) BA(Hons)(Xhosa) Unitra MA PhD Cape Town

Senior Secretary:
Mrs N Kafaar

Languages offered:
Courses are offered in the following languages:
Xhosa, Zulu, Sotho and KiSwahili.

Requirements for a major in Xhosa (XHS):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL1024F Xhosa Intensive A</td>
<td>SLL1025S Xhosa Intensive B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL2012F Xhosa IIA</td>
<td>SLL2013S Xhosa IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL3012F Xhosa IIIA</td>
<td>SLL3013S Xhosa IIIB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For SLL2012F: a Matric pass in Xhosa First Language (or have attained 70% minimum for both SLL1024F and SLL1025S). Students who do not qualify for the above but who have passed Matric Xhosa Second or Third Language or who, in the view of the Head of Section, speak the language or another language in the same language cluster fluently enough, may be permitted to register for the course at the discretion of the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.
(ii) For SLL2013S: SLL2012F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head
(iii) For SLL3012F: SLL2013S
(iv) For SLL3013S: SLL3012F

Postgraduate entrance requirements:
SLL3013S or equivalent, at the discretion of the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head. Students are encouraged to have included in their undergraduate curriculum, courses in African languages, Literature, History and Culture.

Tutorial times:
Arranged internally.
Student representation:

Students in every course are invited to elect a course representative to represent their interests in quarterly staff-student meetings. The term of office is quarterly, renewable for a year. This system of student representation is separate from and additional to the course representation system offered by the Faculty Students' Council and the SRC. Students are also free to discuss personal or academic problems connected with their coursework individually with their lecturers or with the Head of Section.

Course outlines:

African languages for beginners:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SLL1020F</td>
<td>SOTHO INTENSIVE A</td>
<td>First-year, first-semester</td>
<td>5 periods per week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL1022F</td>
<td>SWAHILI INTENSIVE A</td>
<td>First-year, first-semester</td>
<td>5 periods per week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL1024F</td>
<td>XHOSA INTENSIVE A</td>
<td>First-year, first-semester</td>
<td>5 periods per week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL1026F</td>
<td>ZULU INTENSIVE A</td>
<td>First-year, first-semester</td>
<td>5 periods per week.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course outline:
A study of iintsomi with particular reference to society, Xhosa humour and politics.

DP requirements: Completion and due submission of all assigned work.

Assessment:
Class tests, essays and assignments count 30%; one two-hour examination counts 50%; one oral examination counts 20% of the final mark.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SLL1021S</td>
<td>SOTHO INTENSIVE B</td>
<td>First-year, second-semester</td>
<td>5 periods per week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL1023S</td>
<td>SWAHILI INTENSIVE B</td>
<td>First-year, second-semester</td>
<td>5 periods per week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL1025S</td>
<td>XHOSA INTENSIVE B</td>
<td>First-year, second-semester</td>
<td>5 periods per week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL1027S</td>
<td>ZULU INTENSIVE B</td>
<td>First-year, second-semester</td>
<td>5 periods per week.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course outline:
An intensive introduction to the development of communication language skills by listening-understanding, speaking, reading and writing the language. More detailed course information is available from the Section.

DP requirements: Completion and due submission of all assigned work.

Assessment:
Class tests and assignments count 30%; one two-hour examination counts 50%; one oral examination counts 20%.
SLL1016S  SOTHO ADDITIONAL (depending on availability of staff)
SLL1017S  SWAHILI ADDITIONAL (depending on availability of staff)
SLL1018S  XHOSA ADDITIONAL (equivalent to SLL1024F)
SLL1019S  ZULU ADDITIONAL (depending on availability of staff)

Second-semester course, 5 periods per week.

Convenor: To be advised.

Entrance requirements: None. Each course is for students with no prior intensive knowledge of an African language.

Course outline: Communicative language skills are developed intensely as well as applied grammar. Students are also introduced to oral and written language. Issues pertaining to cross-cultural communication are also discussed.

DP requirements: Completion and due submission of all assigned work.

Assessment: Class tests, essays and assignments count 30%; one two-hour examination counts 50%; one oral examination counts 20% of the final mark.

**Xhosa courses:**

SLL2012F  XHOSA IIA

Second-year, first-semester course, 5 meetings a week plus tutorials and laboratory sessions.

Convenor: Associate Professor S Gxilishe.

Entrance requirements: A Matric pass in Xhosa First Language (or have attained 70% minimum for both SLL1024F and SLL1025S). Students who do not qualify for the above but who have passed Matric Xhosa Second or Third Language or who, in the view of the Head of Section, speak the language or another language in the same language cluster fluently enough, may be permitted to register for the course at the discretion of the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.

Course outline: Language and society, including advanced study of Xhosa language structure.

DP requirements: Students are expected to attend lectures, tutorials, laboratory classes and oral practice classes, to prepare adequately for tutorials and oral presentations, to hand in the required written work and write scheduled class tests. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls short of performing the work of the course as so defined.

Assessment: Class tests, essays and assignments count 30%; one two-hour examination counts 50%; one oral examination counts 20% of the final mark.

SLL2013S  XHOSA IIB

Second-year, second-semester course, 5 meetings a week plus tutorials.

Convenor: Dr A Nyamende.

Entrance requirements: SLL2012F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.

Course outline: A study of Xhosa literature, with reference to Missionary and Apartheid influences.
DP requirements:
Students are expected to attend lectures, tutorials, laboratory classes and oral practice classes, to prepare adequately for tutorials and oral presentations, to hand in the required written work and write scheduled class tests. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls short of performing the work of the course as so defined.

Assessment:
Class tests, essays and assignments count 30%; one two-hour examination counts 50%; one oral examination counts 20% of the final mark.

SLL3012F  XHOSA IIIA
Third-year, first-semester course, 5 meetings a week plus tutorials.

Convenor: Dr A Nyamende.

Entrance requirements: SLL2013S.

Course outline:
A complete course outline is available from the Section.

DP requirements:
Students are expected to attend lectures, tutorials, laboratory classes and oral practice classes, to prepare adequately for tutorials and oral presentations, to hand in the required written work and write scheduled class tests. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls short of performing the work of the course as so defined.

Assessment:
Class tests, essays and assignments count 30%; one two-hour examination counts 50%; one oral examination counts 20% of the final mark.

SLL3013S  XHOSA IIIB
Third-year, second-semester course, 4 or 5 meetings a week plus tutorials.

Convenor: Dr A Nyamende.

Entrance requirements: SLL3012F.

Course outline:
A complete course outline is available from the Section.

DP requirements:
Students are expected to attend lectures, tutorials, laboratory classes and oral practice classes, to prepare adequately for tutorials and oral presentations, to hand in the required written work and write scheduled class tests. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls short of performing the work of the course as so defined.

Assessment:
Class tests, essays and assignments count 30%; one two-hour examination counts 50%; one oral examination counts 20% of the final mark.

SLL2022F  AFRICAN LANGUAGES AND LITERARY STUDIES A
(Not offered in 2008)

SLL2023S  AFRICAN LANGUAGES AND LITERARY STUDIES B
(Not offered in 2008)
Afrikaans Section

The Afrikaans Section is housed in the Arts Block, located on University Avenue.

Associate Professor and Head of Section:
C N van der Merwe, BA(Hons) MA Stell LittDrs Utrecht DLitt et Phil RAU

Professors:
J Hambidge, BA(Hons) Stell MA Pret PhD Rhodes PhD Cape Town
E R van Heerden, BA(Hons) LLB Stell MA Witwatersrand PhD Rhodes

Assistant Lecturer:
I W van Rooyen, MA Cape Town

Senior Secretary:
Mrs N Kafaar

Requirements for a major in Afrikaans (AFK):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL2040F Afrikaans IIA</td>
<td>SLL2041S Afrikaans IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL3040F Afrikaans IIIA</td>
<td>SLL3041S Afrikaans IIIB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For SLL2040F: SLL1046S or at least 65% in SLL1049F Afrikaans for Professionals, or with permission of Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head. Furthermore, students with an Afrikaans first-language Matric pass, D symbol or higher, or with a Matric pass in Afrikaans second language, C symbol or higher, may enter this course directly
(ii) For SLL2041S: SLL1046F/S or SLL2040F, or with permission of Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head
(iii) For SLL3040F and SLL3041S: SLL2040F and SLL2041S, or with permission of Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head

Postgraduate entrance requirements:
All graduates will be considered for admission into Honours in Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies on condition that they obtained 4 senior courses in Afrikaans and/or Dutch; or other relevant courses approved by the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.

DP certificate and examinations:
The minimum requirement for a DP certificate (needed to write an examination) is completion of all stipulated assignments and writing of all tests, as well as attendance of at least 75% of the lectures. Border-line cases may be required to do an oral examination after completion of the written examination.

Course outlines:

SLL1042F/S  AFRIKAANS INTENSIVE A
First-year, first- and second-semester course, five lectures and two tutorials per week.
Convenor: I van Rooyen.
Enterance requirements: None. This is a course for beginners; under certain conditions students
with basic knowledge of Afrikaans may be permitted, with permission of the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.

Course outline:
The main object of Afrikaans Intensive A is to develop basic language skills with emphasis on oral communication.

DP requirements:
At least 75% attendance at lectures; completion of all assignments and tests.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in June or October/November counts for 40% of the final mark; an oral examination counts for 20%; the semester's work counts for the remaining 40%.

SLL1043S  AFRIKAANS INTENSIVE B
First-year, second-semester course, four lectures per week.
Convenor: I van Rooyen.

Entrance requirements: Afrikaans Intensive A, or students with prior knowledge of Afrikaans, with permission of the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.

Course outline:
The main object of Afrikaans Intensive B is to develop language proficiency, with emphasis on writing skills. The course also includes an introduction to Afrikaans literature and linguistics.

DP requirements:
At least 75% attendance at lectures; completion of all assignments and tests.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 50% of the final mark; an oral examination counts for 10%; the semester's work counts for the remaining 40%.

SLL1046S  AFRIKAANS MEDIA: THEORY, HISTORY, PRACTICE
First-year, second-semester course, four lectures per week.
Convenor: Professor E van Heerden.

Entrance requirements: A Matric pass in Afrikaans first language or Afrikaans second language with at least a D symbol, or with permission of Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.

Course outline:
Gender and media; ideology and media; metaphor and media; the website: home to virtual communities.

DP requirements:
At least 75% attendance at lectures; completion of all assignments and tests.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 60% of the final mark; the semester's work counts for the remaining 40%.

SLL1049F  AFRIKAANS FOR PROFESSIONALS
First-year, first-semester course, four lectures per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor C van der Merwe.

Entrance requirements: SLL1043S or Afrikaans second language Matric pass or with permission of the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head. The course is not open to first-language speakers of Afrikaans.

Course outline:
A course to improve oral and written proficiency in Afrikaans, focusing on skills needed in the pursuit of careers. The course will include: history taking; interviews; translation; reports and official letters; stories of the day.
DP requirements:
At least 75% attendance at lectures; completion of all assignments and tests.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in June counts for 40% of the final mark; an oral examination counts for
20%; the semester's work counts for the remaining 40%.

SLL2040F  AFRIKAANS IIA
Second-year, first-semester course, four lectures per week.
Convenor: Professor J Hambidge.
Entrance requirements: SLL1046S or at least 65% in SLL1049F Afrikaans for Professionals, or
with permission of Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head. Furthermore,
students with an Afrikaans first-language Matric pass, D symbol or higher, or with a Matric pass in
Afrikaans second language, C symbol or higher, may enter this course directly.
Course outline:
Modern literary theories applied to Afrikaans texts; Afrikaans novel. Topics in Afrikaans and Dutch
poetry; a course on writing. (Further information available from the Section.)

DP requirements:
At least 75% attendance at lectures; completion of all assignments and tests.
Assessment:
One two-hour examination in June counts for 50% of the final mark; the semester's work counts for
the remaining 50%.

SLL2041S  AFRIKAANS IIB
Second-year, second-semester course, four lectures per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor C van der Merwe.
Entrance requirements: SLL2040F, or with permission of Head of Department in consultation
with the Section Head.
Course outline:
Gender and films, literary reviews, social signs in the media, internet and web as text, creative
writing, Afrikaans drama, Dutch poetry.

DP requirements:
At least 75% attendance at lectures; completion of all assignments and tests.
Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 50% of the final mark; the semester's
work counts for the remaining 50%.

SLL3040F  AFRIKAANS IIIA
Third-year, first-semester course, four lectures per week.
Convenor: Professor J Hambidge.
Entrance requirements: SLL2040F and SLL2041S, or with permission of the Head of Department
in consultation with the Section Head.
Course outline:
Afrikaans short stories, Afrikaans fiction before 1960; Dutch fiction; focus on a prominent
Afrikaans poet.

DP requirements:
At least 75% attendance at lectures; completion of all assignments and tests.
Assessment:
One two-hour examination in June counts for 50% of the final mark; the semester's work counts for
the remaining 50%.
SLL3041S  AFRikaANS IIIB
Third-year, second-semester course, four lectures per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor C van der Merwe.
Entrance requirements: As for SLL3040F.
Course outline:
Afrikaans poetry before 1960; modern Afrikaans fiction; historiography as fiction; oeuvre studies.
DP requirements:
At least 75% attendance at lectures; completion of all assignments and tests.
Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 50% of the final mark; the semester's work counts for the remaining 50%.

Arabic Language and Literature Section

The Section is housed in the Beattie Building, located on University Avenue.
The Section can be contacted by e-mail at suzanne.beele@uct.ac.za

Senior Lecturer:
Y Dutton, MA DPhil Oxon

Administrative Officer:
Mrs S Beele

Course outlines:

SLL1058F  INITIAL ARABIC A
First-year, first-semester course, 5 meetings a week.
Convenor: Dr Y Dutton.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
Basic grammar and vocabulary; grammar drill; oral practice at beginner level.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment:
Written and oral assignments and tests count for 40% of the final mark; the two-hour written examination at the end of the first semester counts for 50%; the 10-minute oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

SLL1059S  INITIAL ARABIC B
First-year, second-semester course, 5 meetings a week.
Convenor: Dr Y Dutton.
Entrance requirements: Initial Arabic A (SLL1058F).
Course outline:
Basic grammar and vocabulary; grammar drill; oral practice at beginner level.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment:
Written and oral assignments and tests count for 40% of the final mark; the two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester counts for 50%; the 10-minute oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

SLL2080F ARABIC IIA
Second-year, first-semester course, 5 meetings a week.
Convenor: Dr Y Dutton.
Entrance requirements: Initial Arabic B (SLL1059S) or a level of Arabic approved by the Head of Department.
Course outline: The course offers an intermediate level study of Modern Standard Arabic with emphasis on oral comprehension and written skills.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment: Tests and written assignments count for 40% of the final mark; the two-hour written examination at the end of the first semester counts for 50%; the oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

SLL2081S ARABIC IIB
Second-year, second-semester course, 5 meetings a week.
Convenor: Dr Y Dutton.
Entrance requirements: Arabic IIA (SLL2080F).
Course outline: The course continues from Arabic IIA in offering an intermediate level study of Modern Standard Arabic with emphasis on oral comprehension and writing skills, and introduces the study of Arabic literature.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment: Tests and written assignments count for 40% of the final mark; the two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester counts for 50%; the oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

Classics Section
The Classics Section is housed in the Beattie Building, located on University Avenue.
The Section can be contacted by e-mail at sonja.dekock@uct.ac.za.

Professor and Head of Section:
D Wardle, MA DPhil Oxon

Emeritus Professors:
J E Atkinson, BA(Hons) Dunelm PhD HDipLib Cape Town
R A Whitaker, BA Witwatersrand MA Oxon PhD St Andrews
The courses offered by the Classics Section fall into two main categories: Greek and Latin Language courses and Classical Culture courses.

The Classical Culture courses, dealing with Mediterranean, especially Greek and Roman, History, Culture, Mythology and Literature, and North Africa, require no knowledge of Greek or Latin.

**NOTE:** Students who have twice failed any course in Classics will not be permitted to reregister for such course either with or without attendance.

### Requirements for a major in Classical Studies (CLA):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td><strong>ONE of the following:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL2058F Ancient Mythology</td>
<td>SLL2055S Athenian Life and Culture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL2057F The City in the Ancient World</td>
<td>SLL2056S Roman Society and Law*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL2059F Rome: Literature and Empire*</td>
<td>SLL2051S Latin IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL2050F Latin IIA</td>
<td>SLL2053S Greek IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL2052F Greek IIA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Third year** | **ONE of the following:** |
| SLL3057F The City in the Ancient World | SLL3055S Athenian Life and Culture |
| SLL3059F Rome: Literature and Empire* | SLL3056S Roman Society and Law* |
| SLL3001F Sex: from Sappho to Cyber | SLL3051S Latin IIB |
| SLL3050F Latin IIIA | SLL3053S Greek IIIB |
| SLL3052F Greek IIIA | |

*Next offered in 2009*

### Prerequisites for Cultural/Historical track:

(i) For SLL2058F, SLL2057F and SLL2054F: 2nd year status
(ii) For SLL2055S and SLL2056S: 2nd year status
(iii) For SLL3001F: 3rd year status
(iv) For SLL3057F and SLL3059F: SLL2055S or SLL2056S or SLL3001F
(v) For SLL3055S and SLL3056S: SLL3057F or SLL3059F

**NOTE:** Students majoring in Classical Studies on the Cultural/Historical track must submit a research essay of between 10 000 and 12 000 words by the middle of October in the year in which they major.

### Prerequisites for Latin track:

(i) For SLL2050F: SLL1051S. A student with a C or above in Latin at Matriculation level may register directly for this course at the discretion of the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.
(ii) For SLL2051S: SLL2050F
(iii) For SLL3050F: SLL2051S
(iv) For SLL3051S: SLL3050F

Students who have Matriculated in Latin with a C grade or above may be admitted directly into Latin IIA and thus complete Latin IIIA and B by the end of the following year. Students with Matric Latin who do not qualify for admission into Latin IIA will be required to take Latin IA and/or Latin IB.
Prerequisites for Greek track:
(i) For SLL2052F: SLL1053S
(ii) For SLL2053S: SLL2052F
(iii) For SLL3052F: SLL2053S
(iv) For SLL3053S: SLL3052F

Students wishing to take any senior course in Classical Studies, but not as part of a major in Classical Studies, may be admitted at the discretion of the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.

Credit will not be given for both:
SLL2057F and SLL3057F
SLL2055S and SLL3055S
SLL2059F and SLL3059F
SLL2056S and SLL3056S

Postgraduate entrance requirements:
Minimum requirements for entry into Honours in 2008 in Latin, Greek, Classics, Ancient History, and Greek and Roman Literature and Thought:
Honours in Greek: SLL3052F and SLL3053S
Honours in Latin: SLL3050F and SLL3051S
Honours in Classics: SLL3052F and SLL3053S, plus SLL3050F and SLL3051S

Groupings of courses for entry into Classical Studies Honours:
Group A: SLL2058F, SLL3001F, SLL3057F, SLL3055S.
Group B: SLL2057F, SLL2059F, SLL2056S, SLL3057F, SLL3059F, SLL3055S, SLL3056S.

Course outlines:
Introduction to Language:
SLL1002F/S WORD POWER
(NOTE: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term - please consult the Centre for Open Learning.)
Offered in the first and second semesters, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Mrs G Solomons.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
The course consists of three components:
(1) words and ideas: focus on concepts deriving from ancient words and key words associated with them;
(2) word-building skills;
(3) style: focus on the use of English grammar.
DP requirements:
Students must attend all tutorials, submit all tutorial assignments, and write all tests.
Assessment:
One two-hour examination at the end of the semester counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

Latin:
SLL1050F LATIN IA
First semester, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Mrs G Solomons.
Entrance requirements: None. This course is primarily designed for those who have not studied Latin before, but is also open to those who have done some Latin at school but not enough to enter Latin IIA.

Course outline:
The course provides an introduction to Latin for students with no previous knowledge of Latin. It offers insights into word formation and sentence structure and the Latin roots of common words in English. The syllabus includes a selection of prose and verse passages, and a study of various aspects of Roman life.

DP requirements:
A student will not be permitted to write the examination unless he/she has submitted all coursework.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in June counts for 60% of the final mark; coursework counts 40%.

SLL1051S LATIN IB
Second semester, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Mrs G Solomons.
Entrance requirements: SLL1050F Latin IA.

Course outline:
The course provides further instruction in Latin grammar and syntax, and includes a selection of prose and verse passages, and a study of various aspects of Roman life.

DP requirements:
A student will not be permitted to write the examination unless he/she has submitted all coursework.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 40% of the final mark; coursework counts 60%.

Latin senior courses:

SLL2050F LATIN IIA
First semester, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Associate Professor C E Chandler.
Entrance requirements: SLL1051S Latin IB. A student with a C or above in Latin at Matriculation level may register directly for this course at the discretion of the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.

Course outline:
Language work and prescribed texts, drawn from one or more of the following: Cicero, Catullus, Petronius.

DP requirements:
Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorial assignments, and write all class tests.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in June counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

SLL2051S LATIN IIB
Second semester, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Professor D Wardle.
Entrance requirements: SLL2050F Latin IIA.

Course outline:
Language work and prescribed texts, drawn from one or more of the following: Virgil, Ovid, Livy, Sallust.
DP requirements:
Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorial assignments, and write all class tests.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

SLL3050F  LATIN IIIA
First semester, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Associate Professor C E Chandler.
Entrance requirements: SLL2051S Latin IIB.
Course outline:
Selections from Cicero, Catullus and from Roman Satire (Horace or Juvenal or Petronius). On the language side tuition is given in prose composition and Latin stylistics.

DP requirements:
Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorial assignments, and write all class tests.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in June counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

SLL3051S  LATIN IIIB
Second semester, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Professor D Wardle.
Entrance requirements: SLL3050F Latin IIIA.
Course outline:
Selections from: Virgil or Ovid and Livy or Sallust. On the language side tuition is given in prose composition and Latin stylistics.

DP requirements:
Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorial assignments, and write all class tests.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

Greek:

SLL1052F  GREEK IA
First semester, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Associate Professor C E Chandler.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
This course is designed for students with no previous knowledge of Ancient Greek. It provides an introduction to basic grammar and syntax, and includes reading of selected texts, language work, and aspects of Greek culture.

DP requirements:
To have submitted all coursework.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in June counts for 40% of the final mark; coursework counts for 60%.
SLL1053S  GREEK IB
Second semester, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Associate Professor C E Chandler.
Entrance requirements: SLL1052F Greek IA.
Course outline:
This course builds further on the grammar and syntax taught in SLL1052F Greek IA, and includes further reading of selected texts, language work, and aspects of Greek culture.

DP requirements:
To have submitted all coursework.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 40% of the final mark; coursework counts for 60%.

Greek senior courses:
SLL2052F Greek IIA and SLL3052F Greek IIIA, and SLL2053S Greek IIB and SLL3053S Greek IIIB, have some common components, in particular most of the set work sections; but these differ each year so that no component common to both courses is repeated in successive years. In each year of the Greek Senior courses a selection of works by four authors drawn from the following list is read: Homer, Herodotus, Sophocles, Aristophanes, Euripides, Thucydides, Plato, Demosthenes. In each semester one prose work and one poetic work is read.

SLL2052F  GREEK IIA
First semester, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Associate Professor C E Chandler.
Entrance requirements: SLL1053S Greek IB.
Course outline:
This course includes reading of selected authors (see above), in their socio-historical context, practice in unseen translation, language work and stylistics.

DP requirements:
Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorials and write all class tests.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in June counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

SLL2053S  GREEK IIB
Second semester, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Professor D Wardle.
Entrance requirements: SLL2052F Greek IIA.
Course outline:
This course includes reading of selected authors (see above), in their socio-historical context, practice in unseen translation, language work and stylistics.

DP requirements:
Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorials and write all class tests.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

SLL3052F  GREEK IIIA
First semester, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Associate Professor C E Chandler.
Entrance requirements: SLL2053S Greek IIB.

Course outline:
This course includes reading of selected authors (see above), in their socio-historical context, practice in unseen translation, language work and stylistics.

DP requirements:
Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorials and write all class tests.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in June counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

SLL3053S  GREEK IIIB
Second semester, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Professor D Wardle.

Entrance requirements: SLL3052F Greek IIIA.

Course outline:
This course includes reading of selected authors (see above), in their socio-historical context, practice in unseen translation, language work and stylistics.

DP requirements:
Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorials and write all class tests.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

Courses in Greek, Roman and Mediterranean History, Culture, and Mythology

All material in these courses is studied in English, and no knowledge of Greek, Latin or Hebrew is required. (Students intending to proceed to Classical Studies Honours are strongly encouraged to include a course in Latin or Greek in their undergraduate curriculum.) At the Senior Level most of the Culture and History courses are offered in alternate years. Most of these courses can be taken in a particular year either as a 2000-level course or as a 3000-level course.

SLL1054F  THE WORLD OF ODYSSEUS
First semester, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Associate Professor C E Chandler.

Entrance requirements: None.

Course outline:
This course provides an introduction to the ancient Mediterranean world through Homer's Odyssey, examining the hero, Odysseus, in the context of early Greek society and its oral traditions, and tracing the hero's fortunes in ancient and modern literature, film and art. All texts are studied in English, and no knowledge of ancient languages is required.

DP requirements:
Students must attend classes regularly, submit the prescribed number of essays and assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in June counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

SLL1055S  INTRODUCTION TO CLASSICAL LITERATURE AND THOUGHT: ANCIENT POPULAR CULTURE
Second semester, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Professor D Wardle.

Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
This course provides an education in cultural literacy through written, visual and performative texts (including film), focusing on Greek and Roman writers and artists and their influence in the modern age. Topics covered include Greek and Roman theatre, art, religion, love, sex and gender roles, the novel in antiquity, science and philosophy, Pompeii. (Not all these topics are necessarily taught every year.)

DP requirements:
Students must attend classes regularly, submit the prescribed number of essays and assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

SLL1056S  GREEKS, ROMANS AND JEWS
Second semester, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Professor D Wardle.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
Starting with Alexander the Great's transformation of the Mediterranean world, this course goes on to study the early Roman Empire, and Rome's contact and conflict with the Jews, examining the fall of Jerusalem, and the revolt of Bar Kochba.

DP requirements:
Students must attend classes regularly, submit the prescribed number of essays and assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

Assessment:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

SLL2055S  ATHENIAN LIFE AND CULTURE
Second-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Professor D Wardle.
Entrance requirements: 2nd year status.
Course outline:
A study of the world of ancient Athens - democracy, slavery, the life of women, culture and art, Athenian religion and architecture.

Examination requirements:
One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

SLL2056S  ROMAN SOCIETY AND LAW
(Offered next in 2009)

SLL2057F  THE CITY IN THE ANCIENT WORLD
First-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial weekly.
Convenor: Associate Professor C E Chandler.
Entrance requirements: 2nd year status.
Course outline:
A study of some major cities of the ancient Mediterranean world, such as Rome, Alexandria Byzantium and Carthage. This course will consider how these cities developed and were managed and what life was like for their inhabitants. The evidence includes archaeological finds, art and
literary texts.

**Examination requirements:**
One two-hour examination in June counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

---

**SLL2058F  ANCIENT MYTHOLOGY**
First semester, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial fortnightly.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor C E Chandler.

**Entrance requirements:** 2nd year status.

**Course outline:**
This course provides a detailed study of selected myths of Ancient Greece and Rome, including the following topics: Theories of Myths and their meaning; the ideological uses of Myth; Myth in Classical Art and literature; Myth in post-classical literary and artistic traditions.

**DP requirements:**
Students must attend classes regularly, submit the prescribed number of essays and assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:**
One two-hour examination in June counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

---

**SLL2059F  ROME: LITERATURE AND EMPIRE**
*(Offered next in 2009)*

---

**SLL3001F  SEX FROM SAPPHO TO CYBER**
Third-year, first-semester course, four lectures per week.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor C E Chandler.

**Entrance requirements:** 3rd year status.

**Course outline:**
The study of *erotica* in Europe from antiquity to the modern period.

**DP requirements:**
Submission of the prescribed number of essays.

**Assessment:**
One two-hour examination counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

---

**SLL3055S  ATHENIAN LIFE AND CULTURE**
For course content see under SLL2055S.

---

**SLL3056S  ROMAN SOCIETY AND LAW**
*(Offered next in 2009)*

---

**SLL3057F  THE CITY IN THE ANCIENT WORLD**
For course content see under SLL2057F.

---

**SLL3059F  ROME: LITERATURE AND EMPIRE**
*(Offered next in 2009)*
French Language and Literature Section

The Section is housed in the Beattie Building, located on University Avenue. The Section can be contacted by email at sonja.dekock@uct.ac.za.

Professor of Modern French Literature and Head of Section:
J-L Cornille, Licence en Philologie Romane, Maîtrise en Philologie Romane Anvers Doctorat Nijmegen Habilitation Lille

Senior Lecturer:
V Everson, BA(Hons) Nottingham MA Oxon

Lecturer:
R de Oliveira, Maîtrise Lettres Modernes, DEA Sémiotique Université de Nice Doctorat Sciences du Langage (ILPGA) Paris III Sorbonne Nouvelle

Senior Secretary:
Ms S de Kock

Admission requirements: Students will be admitted to the French Section whether or not they have already studied French.

The courses offered by the French Section are designed for students of French as a foreign language. Students for whom French is a second or home language will be accepted under certain conditions, and after prior discussion with the Section Head.

A student who has not taken French at secondary school will be admitted to the Initial French course (SLL1060F, SLL1061S). Such a student may major after a further 4 semesters of French (SLL2060F, SLL2061S, SLL3060F, SLL3061S or SLL3066H and SLL3067H).

A student qualifies for admission to French Language and Literature II (SLL2060F, SLL2061S) if (i) within the preceding 3 years, he/she has obtained at least a C symbol in French for the Matriculation examination (or a course recognised as equivalent) or (ii) the Head of the Section is satisfied that he/she is able to perform the work of the class. Such a student will major after a further 2 semesters: French Language and Literature IIIA and B (SLL3060F, SLL3061S) or Business French (SLL3066H, SLL3067H).

Requirements for a major in French (FRN):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL2060F French Language and Literature IIA</td>
<td>SLL2061S French Language and Literature IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL3060F French Language and Literature IIIA</td>
<td>SLL3061S French Language and Literature IIIB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For SLL2060F: SLL1061S or a pass in Matric French within the past 3 years with at least a C symbol (or equivalent) or approval by the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head
(ii) For SLL2061S: SLL2060F (or equivalent) or approval by the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head
(iii) For SLL3060F: SLL2061S
(iv) For SLL3061S: SLL3060F
Requirements for a major in Business French (FRB):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SLL2060F French Language and Literature IIA</td>
<td>SLL2061S French Language and Literature IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL3066H Business French IIIA</td>
<td>SLL3067H Business French IIIB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For SLL2060F: SLL1061S or a pass in Matric French within the past 3 years with at least a C symbol (or equivalent) or approval by the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head
(ii) For SLL2061S: SLL2060F (or equivalent) or approval by the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head
(iii) For SLL3066H and SLL3067H: SLL2061S (or equivalent)

Course outlines:

SLL1060F  INITIAL FRENCH A
First-year, first-semester course, five meetings a week, tutorials as required.
Students are required to opt at the beginning of the year for one or other of the two regular lecture times. The time chosen may not subsequently be changed without the special permission of the Section.
Convenor: Dr R de Oliveira.
Entrance requirements: None. This is a course for beginners, but under certain conditions students with some prior knowledge of French may be admitted.
Course outline:
The aim of the course is to provide a practical knowledge of spoken and written French. There is no literature component.
A more detailed course information sheet is available from the Section.
DP requirements:
Students are expected to attend all lectures, tutorials and language laboratory sessions, to prepare adequately for tutorials, to hand in the required written work and write any class tests of which due notice is given. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls seriously short of performing the work of the course as so defined.
Assessment:
Class tests and continuous assessment count for 80% of the final mark; the oral examination in June counts for the remaining 20%.

SLL1061S  INITIAL FRENCH B
First-year, second-semester course, five meetings a week, tutorials as required.
Students are required to opt at the beginning of the semester for one or other of the two regular lecture times. The time chosen may not subsequently be changed without the special permission of the Section.
Convenor: Dr R de Oliveira.
Entrance requirements: SLL1060F or equivalent.
Course outline:
The course is a continuation of SLL1060F. The aim of the course is to provide a practical knowledge of spoken and written French of approximately Matriculation standard. There is no literature component.
A more detailed course information sheet is available from the Section.
DP requirements:
Students are expected to attend all lectures, tutorials and language laboratory sessions, to prepare adequately for tutorials, to hand in the required written work and write any class tests of which due notice is given. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls seriously short of performing the work of the course as so defined.

Assessment:
Class tests and continuous assessment count for 80% of the final mark; the oral examination in October/November counts for the remaining 20%.

SLL2060F  FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IIA
Second-year, first-semester course, five meetings a week plus tutorials and laboratory sessions.
Convenor: Ms V Everson.
Entrance requirements: SLL1061S or a pass in Matriculation French within the past 3 years with at least a C symbol (or equivalent) or approval by the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.
Course outline:
The course comprises French language at intermediate level, an introduction to French and Francophone cultures and literatures, and French media.

DP requirements:
Students are expected to attend lectures, tutorials, laboratory classes and oral practice classes, to prepare adequately for tutorials and oral presentations, to hand in the required written work, and write scheduled class tests. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls short of performing the work of the course as so defined.

Assessment:
The semester's work (language assignments, literary and cultural essays, oral and written tests) counts for 80% of the final mark; the oral examination in June counts for the remaining 20%.

SLL2061S  FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IIB
Second-year, second-semester course, five meetings a week plus tutorials and laboratory sessions.
Convenor: Ms V Everson.
Entrance requirements: SLL2060F or equivalent, or approval by the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.
Course outline:
The course comprises French language at intermediate level, literary works written in French, and French media.

DP requirements:
Students are expected to attend lectures, tutorials, laboratory classes and oral practice classes, to prepare adequately for tutorials and oral presentations, to hand in the required written work, and write scheduled class tests. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls short of performing the work of the course as so defined.

Assessment:
The semester work (language assignments, literary essays, oral and written tests) counts for 80% of the final mark; the oral examination in October/November counts for the remaining 20%.

SLL3060F  FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IIIA
Third-year, first-semester course, five meetings a week plus a tutorial.
Convenor: Professor J-L Cornille.
Entrance requirements: SLL2061S.
Course outline:
Advanced language work, including translation; 17th-20th century prose, poetry and theatre, which
may include African and North African literature written in French.

**DP requirements:**
Students are expected to attend lectures and tutorials, to prepare adequately for tutorials and oral presentations, to hand in the required written work, and write scheduled class tests. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls short of performing the work of the course as so defined.

**Assessment:**
The semester work counts for 80% of the final mark; the oral examination in June counts for the remaining 20%.

---

**SLL3061S  FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IIIB**
Third-year, second-semester course, five meetings a week plus a tutorial.

**Convenor:** Professor J-L Cornille.

**Entrance requirements:** SLL3060F.

**Course outline:**
Advanced language work, including translation; 17th-20th century prose, poetry and theatre, which may include African and North African literature written in French.

**DP requirements:**
Students are expected to attend lectures and tutorials, to prepare adequately for tutorials and oral presentations, to hand in the required written work, and write scheduled class tests. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls short of performing the work of the course as so defined.

**Assessment:**
The semester work counts for 80% of the final mark; the oral examination in June counts for the remaining 20%.

---

**SLL3066H  BUSINESS FRENCH IIIA**
Third-year, whole-year half-course, three meetings per week plus a tutorial.

**Convenor:** Ms V Everson.

**Entrance requirements:** SLL2061S (or equivalent).

**Course outline:**
Introduction to economics, law, marketing and business communications in a Francophone environment, to a level which prepares students to take the CCIP (Chamber of Commerce of Paris) international examinations.

**DP requirements:**
Students are expected to attend lectures and tutorials, to prepare adequately for tutorials and oral presentations, to hand in the required written work, and write scheduled class tests. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls short of performing the work of the course as so defined.

**Assessment:**
The year's work counts for 80% of the final mark; the oral examination in October/November counts for the remaining 20%.

---

**SLL3067H  BUSINESS FRENCH IIIB**
Third-year, whole-year half-course, two meetings per week.

**Convenor:** Ms V Everson.

**Entrance requirements:** SLL2061S (or equivalent).

*(NOTE: Credit will not be given for SLL3067H and SLL3060F + SLL3061S.)*

**Course outline:**
Advanced language work including translation.
DP requirements:
Students are expected to attend lectures and tutorials, to prepare adequately for tutorials and oral presentations, to hand in the required written work, and write scheduled class tests. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls short of performing the work of the course as so defined.

Assessment:
The year's work counts for 80% of the final mark; the oral examination in October/November counts for the remaining 20%.

SLL3070W  FRENCH ADDITIONAL
Third-year, whole-year course; five meetings per week plus a tutorial.
Convenor: Professor J-L Cornille.
Enterance requirements: SLL3061S.
Course outline:
Advanced language work, including translation; literary studies or Business French for students without SLL3066H, SLL3067H.
DP requirements:
Students are expected to attend lectures and tutorials, to prepare adequately for tutorials and oral presentations, to hand in the required written work, and write scheduled class tests. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls short of performing the work of the course as so defined.
Assessment:
The year's work counts for 80% of the final mark; the oral examination in October/November counts for 20%.

German Language and Literature Section
The Section is housed in Beattie Building, located on University Avenue.
The Section can be contacted by email at sonja.dekock@uct.ac.za.

Associate Professor and Head of Section:
G Pakendorf, MA Witwatersrand PhD Cape Town

Lecturers:
B Selzer, BA Rhodes MA Cape Town
J W O Snyman, MA Stell

Senior Secretary:
Ms S de Kock

Admission requirements:
Students with no previous knowledge of German qualify for admission to German Studies IA (SLL1062F). A student wishing to register for German Studies IB (SLL1063S) must have passed German Studies IA (SLL1062F) or an equivalent or must satisfy the Head of Section that he/she is able to perform the work of German Studies IB (SLL1063S).
A student qualifies for admission to German Studies IIA (SLL2062F) if he/she has passed German at Matriculation level within the preceding 5 years with at least a D symbol or a course recognised as equivalent, or must satisfy the Section Head of his/her ability to perform the work of the class.
A student who qualifies for admission to SLL2062F in terms of the above will not be admitted to SLL1062F (German Studies IA) for degree purposes unless the Section Head is satisfied that for some special reason he/she is not able to perform the work of SLL2062F.
DP requirements:
The DP requirements for all courses offered by the Section are identical: at least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including the language laboratory); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

Requirements for a major in German* (GER):
The German Section offers a three-year major for students who start with no knowledge of German at all as well as for those who have Matric German or its equivalent. Students who have not obtained credits for German Additional A and B (SLL3071F and SLL3072S) will not be guaranteed admission into German Honours.
# Please consult the Faculty Office.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SLL2062F German Studies IIA</td>
<td>SLL2063S German Studies IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL3062F German Studies IIIA</td>
<td>SLL3063S German Studies IIIB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For SLL2062F: SLL1063S or a pass in Matric German within the past 5 years with at least a D symbol
(ii) For SLL2063S: SLL2062F
(iii) For SLL3062F: SLL2063S
(iv) For SLL3063S: SLL3062F

Course outlines:

SLL1062F   GERMAN STUDIES IA
First-year, first-semester course, five lectures and one tutorial plus a language laboratory session per week.
Convenor: Ms B Selzer.
Entrance requirements: No previous knowledge of German is required. A student who has passed German at Matriculation level within the preceding five years with at least a D symbol or a course recognised as equivalent will not be admitted to this course for degree purposes unless the Head of Section is satisfied that for some special reason he/she is not able to perform the work of SLL2062F.
Course outline:
The course offers an introduction to modern German language and culture. In the teaching of the course, equal emphasis is placed on speaking, reading and writing German.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including the language laboratory); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment:
The final mark will be calculated as follows:
Coursework (homework and tests) 30%
Two-hour written examination 50%
Language laboratory examination 20%

SLL1063S   GERMAN STUDIES IB
First-year, second-semester course, five lectures and one tutorial plus a language laboratory session per week.
Convenor: Ms B Selzer.

Entrance requirements: Students must have passed SLL1062F. In certain instances, where a student has some informal knowledge of German, he/she may be admitted to German Studies IB without having done German Studies IA, provided the Head of Section is satisfied of the student's German competence. A student who has passed German at Matriculation level within the preceding five years with at least a D symbol or a course recognised as equivalent will not be admitted to this course for degree purposes unless the Head of Section is satisfied that for some special reason he/she is not able to perform the work of SLL2062F.

Course outline:
The course offers an introduction to modern German language and culture. In the teaching of the course, equal emphasis is placed on speaking, reading and writing German.

DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including the language laboratory); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

Assessment:
The final mark will be calculated as follows:
Coursework (homework and tests) 30%
Two-hour written examination 50%
Language laboratory examination 10%
Oral examination 10%

SLL2062F  GERMAN STUDIES IIA
Second-year, first-semester course, five lectures per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor G Pakendorf.

Entrance requirements: SLL1063S or a pass in Matric German within the past 5 years with at least a D symbol.

Course outline:
The course offers an introduction to German cultural and literary as well as language studies on an intermediate level.

DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

Assessment:
The final mark will be calculated as follows:
Coursework 40%
Two-hour written examination 40%
Oral examination 20%

SLL2063S  GERMAN STUDIES IIB
Second-year, second-semester course, five periods per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor G Pakendorf.

Entrance requirements: A student will be admitted to this course if he/she has passed German Studies IIA (SLL2062F).

Course outline:
The course offers an introduction to German cultural and literary studies on an intermediate level.

DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment:
The final mark will be calculated as follows:
Coursework 40%
Two-hour written examination 40%
Oral examination 20%

SLL3062F  GERMAN STUDIES IIIA
Third-year, first-semester course, five periods per week.
Convenor: Ms B Selzer.
Enterance requirements: Students must have passed German Studies IIB (SLL2063S).
Course outline:
The course offers German cultural and literary as well as language studies on an intermediate/advanced level.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment:
The final mark will be calculated as follows:
Coursework 40%
Two-hour written examination 40%
Oral examination 20%

SLL3063S  GERMAN STUDIES IIIB
Third-year, second-semester course, five periods per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor G Pakendorf.
Enterance requirements: Students must have passed German Studies IIIA (SLL3062F).
Course outline:
The course offers an introduction to German cultural and literary studies at an intermediate/advanced level.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment:
The final mark will be calculated as follows:
Coursework 40%
Two-hour written examination 40%
Oral examination 20%

SLL3071F  GERMAN ADDITIONAL A
Third-year, first-semester course, five lectures per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor G Pakendorf.
Enterance requirements: Students must have passed German Studies IIIA and IIIB (SLL3062F/ SLL3063S) with at least a lower second-class mark (at least 65%) in both of these courses.
Course outline:
The course offers German cultural and literary studies on an advanced level.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including the language laboratory); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment:
The final mark will be calculated as follows:
Coursework 40%
Two-hour written examination 40%
Oral examination 20%

**SLL3072S**  GERMAN ADDITIONAL B
Third-year, second-semester course, five lectures per week.
**Convenor:** Associate Professor G Pakendorf.
**Entrance requirements:** Students must have passed German Additional A (SLL3071F).
**Course outline:**
The course offers German cultural and literary as well as language studies on an advanced level.
**DP requirements:**
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
**Assessment:**
The final mark will be calculated as follows:
Coursework 40%
Long essay 40%
Oral examination 20%

---

**Hebrew Language and Literature Section**
The Section is housed at the Kaplan Centre, Rachel Bloch House, located on the corner of Library and Ring Road.

**Senior Lecturer:**
A Reisenberger, MA PhD Cape Town

**Requirements for a major in Hebrew Language and Literature (HEB):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL2082F Hebrew Language and Literature IIA (was HEB2006F)</td>
<td>SLL2083S Hebrew Language and Literature IIB (was HEB2007S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL3082F Hebrew Language and Literature IIIA (was HEB3006F)</td>
<td>SLL3083S Hebrew Language and Literature IIIB (was HEB3007S)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Prerequisites:**
(i) For **SLL2082F**: Matriculation Hebrew (or SLL1082F and SLL1083S), or with the permission of the Head of Department
(ii) For **SLL2083S**: HEB2006F/SLL2082F, or with the permission of the Head of Department
(iii) For **SLL3082F**: HEB2006F/SLL2082F and HEB2007S/SLL2083S
(iv) For **SLL3083S**: HEB3006F/SLL3082F
Course outlines:

**SLL1082F** HEBREW INTENSIVE A (was HEB1010F)
First-year, first-semester course, five lectures per week plus one tutorial.
**Convenor:** Dr A Reisenberger.
**Entrance requirements:** None. The course is designed for those who have not studied Hebrew before. In special cases students with an elementary knowledge of Hebrew may be admitted into the course by special permission of the Head of Department.
**Course outline:**
The course introduces students to Hebrew linguistics, including basic skills in reading, writing and conversation.
**DP requirements:**
Students must attend regularly, prepare adequately for language classes and tutorials and submit the prescribed number of written assignments, and write any class tests.
**Assessment:**
One two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark; the remaining 50% is awarded for classwork (35%) and oral (15%).

**SLL1083S** HEBREW INTENSIVE B (was HEB1012S)
First-year, second-semester course, five lectures per week plus one tutorial.
**Convenor:** Dr A Reisenberger.
**Entrance requirements:** SLL1082F (was HEB1010F) or equivalent by permission of the Head of Department. Students who have Matriculation Hebrew are not eligible for registration within a period of five years after Matriculation.
**Course outline:**
The course focuses on Hebrew grammar, vocabulary, conversation, reading and writing skills.
**DP requirements:** As for SLL1082F.
**Assessment:**
One two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark; the remaining 50% is awarded for classwork (35%) and oral (15%).

**SLL2082F** HEBREW LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IIA (was HEB2006F)
Second-year, first-semester course, four lectures and one tutorial weekly.
**Convenor:** Dr A Reisenberger.
**Entrance requirements:** Matriculation Hebrew or SLL1083S (was HEB1012S), or with the permission of the Head of Department.
**Course outline:**
The course comprises Hebrew language and stylistics and literary texts.
**DP requirements:**
Students are expected to attend regularly, prepare adequately for language classes and tutorials and submit the prescribed number of written assignments, and write any class tests.
**Assessment:**
One two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark; the remaining 50% is awarded for classwork (35%) and oral (15%).

**SLL2083S** HEBREW LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IIB (was HEB2007S)
Second-year, second-semester course, four lectures and one tutorial weekly.
**Convenor:** Dr A Reisenberger.
**Entrance requirements:** SLL2082F (was HEB2006F) or with the permission of the Head of Department.
Course outline:
The course comprises Hebrew language and stylistics and literature.

**DP requirements:** As for SLL2082F.

**Assessment:**
One two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark; the remaining 50% is awarded for classwork (35%) and oral (15%).

---

**SLL3082F**  HEBREW LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IIIA (was HEB3006F)
Third-year, first-semester course, four lectures and one tutorial weekly.

**Convenor:** Dr A Reisenberger.

**Entrance requirements:** SLL2083S (was HEB2007S).

**Course outline:**
On the language side tuition is offered in Hebrew composition and conversational Hebrew, and on Hebrew grammar. For the literature component the emphasis is on the Hebrew Bible studied from a literary perspective.

**DP requirements:**
Students must attend regularly and prepare adequately for language classes and tutorials, and submit the prescribed number of written assignments, and write any class tests.

**Assessment:**
One two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark; the remaining 50% is awarded for classwork (35%) and oral (15%).

---

**SLL3083S**  HEBREW LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IIIB (was HEB3007S)
Third-year, second-semester course, four lectures and one tutorial weekly.

**Convenor:** Dr A Reisenberger.

**Entrance requirements:** SLL3082F (was HEB3006F).

**Course outline:**
On the language side tuition is offered in Hebrew composition and conversational Hebrew, and on Hebrew grammar. For the literature component the emphasis is on prose, and the focus will be on the emergence of modern Hebrew fiction from the nineteenth century to modernity, with special attention to poetics, themes and current criticism.

**DP requirements:** As for SLL3082F.

**Assessment:**
One two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark; the remaining 50% is awarded for classwork (35%) and oral (15%).

---

**Italian Studies Section**

The Section is housed in the Beattie Building, located on University Avenue.
The Section can be contacted by email at suzanne.beele@uct.ac.za.

**Lecturer and Head of Section:**
J W O Snyman, MA Stell

**Associate Professor:**
N Saxby, BA (Hons) MPhil Lond PhD Cape Town

**Administrative Officer:**
Mrs S Beele
Requirements for a major in Italian (ITA):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL2064F Italian IIA</td>
<td>SLL2065S Italian IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL3064F Italian IIIA</td>
<td>SLL3065S Italian IIIB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For **SLL2064F**: SLL1065S
(ii) For **SLL2065S**: SLL2064F
(iii) For **SLL3064F**: SLL2064F and SLL2065S
(iv) For **SLL3065S**: SLL3064F

Other courses:
Apart from the Italian language courses, the Section contributes to Sex from Sappho to Cyber (SLL3001F) (see under Classics Section) and to European Literary Influences (SLL1003S) (see under School-based courses).

DP requirements: For all courses regular attendance at lectures and tutorials and punctual handing in of all written work will be expected.

Course outlines:

**SLL1064F  ITALIAN INTENSIVE A**
First-year, first-semester course, 5 meetings a week.
Convenor: J W O Snyman.

Entrance requirements: None. Students with a Matriculation pass or equivalent in Italian or mother-tongue speakers may be admitted directly into SLL2064F at the Head of Section's discretion.

Course outline:
Basic grammar and vocabulary; grammar drill; oral practice at beginner level.

DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

Assessment:
Written and oral assignments and tests count for 50% of the final mark; the two-hour written examination at the end of the first semester counts for 40%; the 10-minute oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

**SLL1065S  ITALIAN INTENSIVE B**
First-year, second-semester course, 5 meetings a week.
Convenor: J W O Snyman.

Entrance requirements: SLL1064F.

Course outline:
Basic grammar and vocabulary; introductory readings and comprehension techniques; an overview of contemporary Italy; oral practice at beginner level.

DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment:
Class tests count for 50%; the two-hour written examination in October/November for 40% and the 10-minute oral examination in October/November for 10% of the final mark.

SLL2064F  ITALIAN IIA
Second-year, first-semester course, 5 meetings a week.
Convenor: J W O Snyman.
Entrance requirements: SLL1065S.
Course outline:
Intermediate-level language work and basic translation; Italian literary texts and cultural background; comprehension and reading techniques; oral acquisition of current non-literary vocabulary.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment:
Written and oral assignments and tests count for 50%; the two-hour written examination at the end of the first semester counts for 30%; the 15-minute oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 20%.

SLL2065S  ITALIAN IIB
Second-year, second-semester course, 5 meetings a week.
Convenor: J W O Snyman.
Entrance requirements: SLL2064F.
Course outline:
Comprehension and reading techniques; oral acquisition of current non-literary vocabulary; Italian literary texts and cultural background.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment:
Written and oral assignments and tests count for 50%; the two-hour written examination at the end of the semester counts for 30%; the 20-minute oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 20%.

SLL3064F  ITALIAN IIIA
Third-year, first-semester course, 5 meetings a week.
Convenor: Associate Professor N Saxby.
Entrance requirements: SLL2064F + SLL2065S.
Course outline:
The formation of Italian in its historical perspective; translation (Italian-English) of contemporary Italian writing; advanced translation work (English-Italian); advanced oral acquisition of current non-literary vocabulary; further study of Italian literary texts and cultural background.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment:
Written and oral assignments and tests count for 50%; the two-hour written examination at the end of the semester counts for 30%; the 20-minute oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 20%.

SLL3065S  ITALIAN IIIB
Third-year, second-semester course, 5 meetings a week.
Convenor: Associate Professor N Saxby.
Entrance requirements: SLL3064F.
Course outline:
Varieties of literary Italian; translation work (Italian-English/English-Italian); advanced oral acquisition of current non-literary vocabulary; further study of Italian literary texts and cultural background.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment:
Written and oral assignments and tests count for 50% of the final mark; the two-hour written examination at the end of the semester counts for 30%; the 30-minute oral examination counts for 20%.

Portuguese Language and Literature Section

The Portuguese Language and Literature Section is housed in the Beattie Building, located on University Avenue.
The Section can be contacted by email at suzanne.beele@uct.ac.za.

Lecturer:
A Simango, CFFP Licenciatura Eduardo Mondlane

Administrative Officer:
Mrs S Beele

The School of Languages and Literatures hopes to offer a full major in Portuguese, but students entering in 2008 should not base their curriculum on the assumption that they can progress beyond SLL2076S Portuguese IIB.

Course outlines:

SLL1075F  INITIAL PORTUGUESE A
First-year, first-semester course, five meetings per week plus a tutorial/language laboratory session.
Convenor: A Simango.
Entrance requirements: None. This is a course for beginners, but under certain circumstances students with prior knowledge of Portuguese may be admitted.
Course outline:
This course emphasises the acquisition of basic comprehension, reading and speaking skills, based on key aspects of grammar and vocabulary in Portuguese. It also offers an overview of Portuguese-speaking countries.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and language laboratory sessions; completion and
timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:**
Coursework (homework and tests) counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 50%; oral/language laboratory examination counts for 10%.

---

**SLL1076S INITIAL PORTUGUESE B**
First-year, second-semester course, five meetings a week.
**Convenor:** A Simango.
**Entrance requirements:** SLL1075F, or equivalent at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**
The course provides a review of the basics of Portuguese grammar, introduces some more complex structures (past tenses), extends the vocabulary and develops the student's ability to compose simple communicative texts on professional, educational and personal related topics. This course is a continuation of SLL1075F. Lectures are conducted both in English and Portuguese.

**DP requirements:**
At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and language laboratory sessions; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:**
Coursework (homework and tests) counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 50%; oral/language laboratory examination counts for 10%.

---

**SLL2075F PORTUGUESE IIA**
Second-year, first-semester course, five meetings per week.
**Convenor:** A Simango.
**Entrance requirements:** SLL1076S Initial Portuguese B or Matriculation Portuguese, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**
The course aims to provide a practical knowledge of spoken and written Portuguese at an intermediate level and to introduce the study of Portuguese literature.

**DP requirements:**
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:**
Coursework (homework and tests) counts for 40% of the final mark; the two-hour written examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

---

**SLL2076S PORTUGUESE IIB**
Second-year, second-semester course, five meetings per week.
**Convenor:** A Simango.
**Entrance requirements:** SLL2075F Portuguese IIA.

**Course outline:**
The course aims to provide a practical knowledge of spoken and written Portuguese at an intermediate level and to continue the study of Portuguese literature.

**DP requirements:**
At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.
Assessment:
Tests and written assignments count for 40% of the final mark; the two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester counts for 50%; the oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

Spanish Language and Literature Section

The Spanish Language and Literature Section is housed in the Beattie Building, located on University Avenue.
The Section can be contacted by e-mail at sonja.dekock@uct.ac.za.

Lecturer and Head of Section:
C Tilve, MA Alicante

Lecturer:
M A Sánchez-López, MA Valladolid

Senior Secretary:
Ms S de Kock

Requirements for a major in Spanish (SPA):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL2073F Spanish IIA</td>
<td>SLL2074S Spanish IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLL3073F Spanish IIIA</td>
<td>SLL3074S Spanish IIIB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For SLL2073F: SLL1074S
(ii) For SLL2074S: SLL2073F
(iii) For SLL3073F: SLL2073F and SLL2074S
(iv) For SLL3074S: SLL3073F

Course outlines:

**SLL1073F INITIAL SPANISH A**
First-year, first-semester course, five meetings per week plus a tutorial/language laboratory session.

*NOTE: The department is unable to offer more than 60 places in this course in 2008. In view of this, the Faculty proposes that in selecting students for the course, preference will be given to students as follows:*
*Past or current registration for another Romance language;*
*Priority to senior students;*
*Intention to register for both Initial Spanish A and B.*

Convenor: Ms C Tilve.

**Entrance requirements:** None. This is a course for beginners, but under certain circumstances students with prior knowledge of Spanish may be admitted.

**Course outline:**
The course aims to provide a practical knowledge of spoken and written Spanish.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and language laboratory sessions; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework (homework and tests) counts for 30% of the final mark; two-hour written
examination counts for 50%; oral/language laboratory examination counts for 20%.

**SLL1074S  INITIAL SPANISH B**

First-year, second-semester course, five meetings per week plus tutorial/language laboratory session.

**Convenor:** Ms C Tilve.

**Entrance requirements:** SLL1073F, or equivalent at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course is a continuation of SLL1073F and aims to provide a practical knowledge of spoken and written Spanish of approximately Matriculation standard. There is no in-depth study of literature at this level.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and language laboratory sessions; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework (homework and tests) counts for 30% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 50%; oral/language laboratory examination counts for 20%.

**SLL2073F  SPANISH IIA**

Second-year, first-semester course, five meetings per week.

**Convenor:** Ms C Tilve.

**Entrance requirements:** Initial Spanish B (SLL1074S) or Matriculation Spanish, or by arrangement with the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course aims to provide a practical knowledge of spoken and written Spanish at an intermediate level and to introduce the study of Spanish literature.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and language laboratory sessions; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Class tests count for 40% of the final mark; the two-hour written examination at the end of the first semester counts for 50%; the oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

**SLL2074S  SPANISH IIB**

Second-year, second-semester course, five meetings per week.

**Convenor:** Ms C Tilve.

**Entrance requirements:** Spanish IIA (SLL2073F).

**Course outline:**

The course aims to provide a practical knowledge of spoken and written Spanish at an intermediate level and to continue the study of Spanish literature.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and language laboratory sessions; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Tests and written assignments count for 40% of the final mark; two two-hour written examinations at the end of the second semester count for 50%; the oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

**SLL3073F  SPANISH IIIA**

Third-year, first-semester course, five meetings per week (plus conversation/language laboratory).

**Convenor:** Ms C Tilve.

**Entrance requirements:** SLL2074S, or equivalent at the discretion of the Head of Section.
Course outline:
Advanced language work, including translation; 17th to 20th century prose, poetry and drama, including texts from Spain and southern America.

DP requirements: Students are expected to attend lectures and tutorials, to prepare adequately for tutorials and oral presentations, to hand in all required written work and write scheduled class tests. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls short of performing the work of the course.

Assessment: The semester’s written and oral work counts for 50% of the final mark; a two-hour written examination and a 20 minute oral examination in June count for 30% and 20% respectively.

SLL3074S SPANISH IIIB
Third-year, second-semester course, five meetings per week (plus conversation/language laboratory).
Convenor: Ms C Tilve.
Entrance requirements: SLL3073F, or equivalent at the discretion of the Head of Section.
Course outline:
Advanced language work, including translation; 17th to 20th century prose, poetry and drama, including texts from Spain and southern America.

DP requirements: Students are expected to attend lectures and tutorials, to prepare adequately for tutorials and oral presentations, to hand in all required written work and write scheduled class tests. The DP certificate may be refused to any student who falls short of performing the work of the course.

Assessment: The semester’s written and oral work counts for 50% of the final mark; a two-hour written examination and a 20 minute oral examination in October/November count for 30% and 20% respectively.

School-based courses:

SLL1003S EUROPEAN LITERARY INFLUENCES
First-year, second-semester course.
Convenor: Associate Professor C E Chandler.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
European literature has had, and still has, an enormous influence on English poetry, prose and drama. In this course we examine the impact that writers such as Homer, Ovid, Seneca, Dante and the French Symbolist poets have had on English authors such as, among others, Shakespeare, T S Eliot, Ted Hughes and Derek Walcott. The course aims particularly to develop skills in the close reading of English literary texts.

DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests, written and oral examinations.

Assessment:
Classwork 50%; one two-hour examination in October/November 50%.

SLL2000F/SLL3000F WOMEN’S WRITING
(Not offered in 2008)
The Law departments are housed in the Wilfred & Jules Kramer Law School, Middle Campus.

Notes on curriculum requirements for intending Law students:
1. Students wishing to major in Law should indicate this when registering in their first year. Failing this, they must declare their intent by completing the form provided for this purpose at the Undergraduate Office no later than 15 November of their first year.
2. It is highly recommended that students who major in Law should complete the second year requirements for two other majors in case they are unable to complete the Law major.

Requirements for a major in Law (LAW):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Second year</th>
<th>Third year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RDL1002H Law of Persons and Marriage</td>
<td>PBL2000W Constitutional Law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDL1003W Foundations of South African Law</td>
<td>PBL2001H International Law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDL1004H Comparative Legal History</td>
<td>RDL2002H Law of Property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For RDL1003W, RDL1004H and RDL1002H: an overall average of 65% in first year, calculated on a full course load of 8 courses

Course outlines:

**RDL1002H LAW OF PERSONS AND MARRIAGE**

Preliminary level, whole-year half-course, 60 lectures, 4 tutorials.

**Convenor:** Professor C Himonga.

**Entrance requirements:** A student registered for a first degree of Bachelor in the Faculty of Humanities may register for RDL1002H Law of Persons and Marriage only if he/she has completed a standard (8 course load) first year and has achieved an overall percentage of at least 65%. Concurrent registration with RDL1003W Foundations of South African Law and RDL1004H Comparative Legal History.

**Course outline:**
The course deals with the legal personality of human beings and the law of persons and marriage as follows:

**A  The law of persons:**
1. The definition of entities that are considered to have legal personality
2. The beginning and end of legal personality
3. The legal status and capacities of different groups of persons
4. The relationship of parent and child

**B  The law governing family relations in a civil and customary marriage:**
1. Introduction to Family Law and the impact of the Bill of Rights
2. The rules governing the contracts of engagement and marriage
3. The invariable consequences of marriage
4. The rules governing divorce
5. **Outline of the property consequences of divorce**

**Assessment:**
- April test 10%
- June test (1 Hr) 20%
- Two essays 5% each
- One two-hour examination in October/November 60%

---

**RDL1003W FOUNDATIONS OF SOUTH AFRICAN LAW**

Preliminary level, whole-year course, five lectures per week, tutorials.

**Convenors:** Dr A J Barnard-Naudé and Mr J D Jonker.

**Entrance requirements:** A student registered for a first degree of Bachelor in Humanities or Commerce may register for RDL1003W Foundations of South African Law only if s/he has completed a standard (8 course load) first year and has achieved an overall percentage of at least 65%. Concurrent registration with RDL1004H Comparative Legal History and RDL1002H Law of Persons and Marriage.

**Course outline:**
1. General introduction to the study of South African Law
2. The sources of South African Law
3. Legal reasoning, with special attention to the doctrine of precedent
4. Classification of the law and fundamental legal concepts
5. Introduction to legal history in South Africa
6. Introduction to legal theory and critical thinking
7. The relationship between law, justice and responsibility

**Assessment:**
- Integrated Assessment written component (1st semester) 10%
- Integrated Assessment oral component (2nd semester) 10%
- June test 15%
- One essay (2nd semester) 15%
- November examination 50%

5% will be deducted from the final mark (ie, a final mark of 70% will be reduced to 65%, or of 50% to 45%) of a student who failed to produce satisfactory work for EVERY tutorial assignment.

Students are required to complete one practical exercise in the first semester. 5% will be deducted from the final mark of a student who failed to produce satisfactory work.

---

**RDL1004H COMPARATIVE LEGAL HISTORY**

Preliminary level, whole-year half-course, 60 lectures and 4 tutorials.

**Convenor:** Professor D P Visser.

**Entrance requirements:** A student registered for a first degree of Bachelor in Humanities or Commerce may register for RDL1004H Comparative Legal History only if s/he has completed a standard (8 course load) first year and has achieved an overall percentage of at least 65%. Concurrent registration with RDL1003W Foundations of South African Law and RDL1002H Law of Persons and Marriage.

**Course outline:**
This course is aimed at giving students a solid background to the development of Private Law, especially in the areas of obligations and the law of property. To this end the following is taught:

(a) The first semester begins with an overview of the development of the law since the classical period of Roman law, through the Middle Ages until today.

(b) The bulk of the first semester is devoted to a consideration of the rules of Roman law in key areas of contract, delict, enrichment, unauthorized administration and property. The focus is on learning how a legal system fits together in a substantive way and in the process students will be familiarized with the basic building blocks of South African Private Law.
(c) In the second semester certain themes, institutions and rules encountered in the first semester and which are particularly important in modern South African law are singled out and their development from Roman law to modern law is traced. The main focus in this part of the course is to demonstrate the temporal contingency of legal rules as well as the importance of understanding the background of a modern legal rule. As far as possible the development of the relevant legal rules are compared with those in related legal systems.

**Assessment:**
- April test: 5%
- June test: 25%
- Essays and/or assignments: 10%
- One two-hour examination in October/November: 60%

---

**RDL2002H  LAW OF PROPERTY**

Preliminary level, whole-year half-course, two lectures per week, tutorials.

**Convenor:** Ms A Pope.

**Entrance requirements:** A student registered for a first degree of Bachelor in Humanities or Commerce may not register for Law of Property unless s/he has completed all the law courses from the previous year. Concurrent registration with PBL2000W Constitutional Law and PBL2001H International Law.

**Course outline:**
1. Introduction to the principles of South African Law of Property
2. Property rights: real rights and personal rights
3. Limited real rights and other rights in property
4. Possession
5. Ownership
6. Constitutional issues

**Assessment:**
- Tests/assignments: 40%
- One two-hour examination in October/November: 60%

---

**PBL2000W  CONSTITUTIONAL LAW**

Preliminary level, whole-year course, three lectures per week, tutorials.

**Convenor:** Professor C M Murray.

**Entrance requirements:** A student registered for a first degree of Bachelor in Humanities or Commerce may not register for PBL2000W Constitutional Law unless s/he has completed all the law courses from the previous year. Concurrent registration with PBL2001H International Law and RDL2002H Law of Property.

**Course outline:**
The first part of the course provides an introduction to the history of South African constitutional law and basic concepts such as democracy, legitimacy, constitutionalism, federalism, separation of powers and the rule of law. It then considers the institutional framework provided by the South African Constitution in detail.

The second part of the course focuses on the protection of human rights in the Constitution. It examines the operation of the Bill of Rights and, using both SA cases and the jurisprudence of constitutional courts in other jurisdictions as well as the European Court of Human Rights, considers freedom of speech, equality and affirmative action, the protection of property rights and social and economic rights among other issues.

**Assessment:**
One three-hour examination at the end of the year counts 60% of the final mark. The year mark contributes the remaining 40% of the mark (class test in June counts 20%, and four assignments count 5% each).
PBL2001H INTERNATIONAL LAW
Preliminary level, whole-year half-course, two lectures per week; tutorials.
Convenor: Mr S Nakhjavani.
Entrance requirements: A student registered for a first degree of Bachelor in Humanities or Commerce may not register for PBL2001H International Law unless s/he has completed all the law courses from the previous year. Concurrent registration with PBL2000W Constitutional Law and RDL2002H Law of Property.
Course outline:
History and sources of international law; sovereignty and jurisdiction; the relationship between international and municipal law; international legal personality; objects, treaties; sovereign immunity; human rights; protection of aliens; self-determination; state responsibility; state succession; settlement of disputes; use of force; the UN; and international criminal law.
Assessment:
Tests/assignments 40%
October/November examination 60%
SCHOOL OF MANAGEMENT STUDIES
(Faculty of Commerce)

The School is housed in the Leslie Commerce Building, Room 4.37. Telephone number: 650-3778.

Professor and Head of Department:
J Simpson, BSc MBA PhD Cape Town

Professor of Organisational Psychology:
J Louw-Potgieter, MA Stell Drs Psych Leiden PhD Bristol

Requirements for a major in Organisational Psychology (ORP):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY1001W Psychology I</td>
<td>BUS1007S Intro to Organisational Psychology (was BUS132S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUS2014F Organisational Behaviour &amp; Research (was BUS230F)</td>
<td>BUS2015S Organisational Design &amp; Resourcing (was BUS231S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUS3002F Organisational Learning &amp; Wellness (was BUS334F)</td>
<td>BUS3003S Labour Relations &amp; Organisational Change (was BUS335S)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For BUS2014F and BUS2015S: BUS1007S or PSY1001W
(ii) For BUS3002F and BUS3003S: PSY1001W, BUS2014F and BUS2015S

Course outlines:

BUS1004W INTRODUCTION TO MANAGEMENT

*NOTE: This course is only available to students outside the Commerce Faculty.*

Second-year, whole-year course, three lectures (Monday, Wednesday and Friday) and one tutorial per week.

Convenor: N Frey.

Entrance requirements: Students applying for admission to this course must be in their second or subsequent year of study. As places are limited, students will be selected on criteria to be determined by the heads of departments concerned, who will take into account previous academic record and degree of educational disadvantage.

Objective: The objectives of the course are to provide a general introduction in management to students studying in non-managerial disciplines, but whose careers will have a significant managerial component. The course covers the main functional areas of management. It seeks to ensure that students appreciate the relationships between all areas of management in respect of the co-ordination of the activities of the organisation.

Course outline:

The course is a full credit course and will consist of a number of modules presented over two semesters. The first semester test will be written in May/June and the final examination in October/November. Two additional class tests will also be written. The basic structure of the course is as follows:

First Semester: Introduction to business management; the environment, principles of economics,
forms of enterprise; players; vision, mission and goals; management of the enterprise, general and strategic management; entrepreneurship; small and medium-sized enterprises.

Second Semester: human resource management, productions and operations management; financial management; marketing management; information management.

**DP requirements:**
To qualify for a duly performed certificate, a student must attend and participate in at least 75% tutorials, complete all tests, essays, tutorials, projects and other assignments and attain a minimum class mark of 35% of the total marks available for class work.

**Assessment:**
- Tutorials: 5%
- Class Tests: 20%
- Project: 10%
- Essay: 5%
- May/June first semester test: 30%
- October/November examination: 30%

---

**BUS1005F  INTRODUCTION TO CORPORATE FINANCE**

*NOTE: This course is only available to students outside the Commerce Faculty.*

Second year, first-semester course, four lectures, one tutorial per week. Except with the permission of the Head of Department this course may not be taken in the first year of study.

**Convenor:** To be advised.

**Entrance requirements:** Matriculation Mathematics or STA1004H Statistics Intensive.

**Objective:** This course is designed to provide a general introduction to the study of the financial function in business, particularly in a South African environment. The course has two primary objectives: Firstly to expose students with little or no commercial or financial background to the fundamentals of the financial aspects of a business and the environment in which that business operates. The second objective is to afford the students the opportunity of gaining as much practical experience as possible in this area.

**Course outline:**
- Introduction to corporate finance; concepts in finance; the business environment; basics of accounting; financial intermediaries; forms of business organisation; financial statements; time value of money; cost volume profit relationships; capital budgeting; sources of finance; financial leverage; working capital management; short term financing; dividends; financial ratios.

**DP requirements:**
Writing all class tests, at least 80% attendance at tutorials, satisfactory completion of all assignments, at least 35% average year mark.

**Assessment:**
- Classwork: 40%
- June examination: 60%

---

**BUS1007S  INTRODUCTION TO ORGANISATIONAL PSYCHOLOGY**

*(was BUS132S)*

First-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures per week and a two-hour tutorial every second week.

**Convenor:** Dr A Schlechter.

**Entrance requirements:** Entry into this course is restricted to BBusSc students in the special field of Organisational Psychology and students from other faculties who may go on to complete senior courses in Organisational Psychology.

**Course outline:**
This course typically will introduce students to the field of Organisational Psychology, using three organising principles, namely Organisations, People and Human Resource Processes.
DP requirements:
Completion of all tests and tutorial assignments. Minimum of 35% for coursework. Attendance is compulsory for all tutorials.

Assessment:
Coursework (tutorials, assignments and tests) 60%
October/November examination 40%

BUS2014F ORGANISATIONAL BEHAVIOUR & RESEARCH (was BUS230F)
Second-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures per week, one two-hour tutorial every second week.
Convenor: Associate Professor J Bagraim.

Entrance requirements: Students must have passed BUS1007S Introduction to Organisational Psychology or PSY1001W Psychology I. Under exceptional circumstances and at the discretion of the Head of Department, students who have passed BUS1006S People Management may be permitted to register.

Course outline:
The course consists of two modules, Organisational Behaviour and Organisational Research. Organisational Behaviour will typically include groups, motivation, leadership and managing relationships. Organisational Research will typically include scientific method, research design, research methods, descriptive statistics and normativity.

DP requirements: Completion of all tests and tutorial assignments. Minimum of 40% for coursework. Attendance is compulsory for all tutorials.

Assessment:
Coursework (tutorials, assignments and tests) 60%
June examination 40%

BUS2015S ORGANISATIONAL DESIGN AND RESOURCING (was BUS231S)
Second-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures per week and one two-hour tutorial every second week.
Convenor: Associate Professor J Bagraim.

Entrance requirements: Students must have passed BUS1007S Introduction to Organisational Psychology or PSY1001W Psychology I. Under exceptional circumstances and at the discretion of the Head of Department, students who have completed BUS1006S People Management may be permitted to register.

Course outline:
The course consists of two modules, Organisational Architecture and Recruitment & Selection. The Organisational Architecture module typically will include organisational strategy, organisational design, job and job role design and reward design. The Recruitment & Selection module typically will include the recruitment and selection process, competency-based recruitment and selection, assessment, and ethics of recruitment and selection.

DP requirements: Completion of all tests and tutorial assignments. Minimum of 40% for coursework. Attendance is compulsory for all tutorials.

Assessment:
Coursework (tutorials, assignments and tests) 60%
October/November examination 40%

BUS3002F ORGANISATIONAL LEARNING & WELLNESS (was BUS333F and BUS334F)
Third-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures per week and one two-hour tutorial every second week.
Convenor: Ms S Goodman.

Entrance requirements: Students must have passed both BUS2014F Organisational Behaviour and
Course outline:
The course consists of two modules, Organisational Learning, and Health, Safety & Wellness. The Organisational Learning module typically will include the new role of the training manager, the National Skills Development Initiative, organisational strategy and learning needs, designing effective learning material, evaluation of learning, and the learning organisation. The Health, Safety & Wellness module typically will include legal requirements for a healthy and safe workplace, career psychology, stress, work-family conflict, HIV/AIDS in the workplace, employee assistance programmes, and corporate social investment programmes aimed at community health.

DP requirements: Completion of all tests and tutorial assignments. Minimum of 40% for coursework. Attendance is compulsory for all tutorials.

Assessment:
Coursework (tutorials, assignments and tests) 60%
June examination 40%
MATHEMATICS AND APPLIED MATHEMATICS
(Faculty of Science)

The Department is housed in the Mathematics Building, 7 University Avenue. The departmental abbreviation for Mathematics and Applied Mathematics is MAM. The departmental website address is http://www.mth.uct.ac.za.

NOTES:
1. All students registered for a course will be required to attend lectures and tutorial classes prescribed for that course.
2. Most syllabuses indicate the contents of the various courses as recently given. All courses are subject to revision without advance notice.
3. Courses in Mathematics for Engineering and for Commerce Faculty students are offered by the Department. See relevant Handbooks.
4. In exceptional cases, usual entrance requirements may be waived with the special permission of the Head of Department.
5. Most administrative course information, such as lists of prescribed/recommended textbooks, lecture and tutorial timetables, test details, etc. can be found on the departmental website and will also be published on the departmental notice boards.
6. The Mathematics Hot Seat in Room 210 on level 2 in the Mathematics Building is open for several hours every day and students in the first-year courses MAM1000W, MAM1004F, MAM1004H, MAM1005H and MAM1006H are encouraged to go there for assistance with their mathematics problems. The Hot Seat's webpage can be located from our main website address.

Requirements for a major in Mathematics (MTH):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First year</th>
<th>Second year</th>
<th>Third year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAM1000W Mathematics I (or equivalent)</td>
<td>MAM2000W Mathematics II</td>
<td>MAM3000W Mathematics III</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For MAM1000W: a pass in Mathematics with at least 50% on the Higher Grade (or at least a D symbol at A-level) is normally required for provisional registration for MAM1000W. Students who have not reached a satisfactory level at the end of the first quarter will have their provisional registration for MAM1000W cancelled, but will be allowed to register for MAM1005H at the beginning of the second quarter.
(ii) For MAM2000W: MAM1000W, MAM1002W, or an equivalent.
(iii) For MAM3000W: MAM2000W.

First-year courses
One full course is offered in the Faculty of Humanities: MAM1000W. Credit equivalent to MAM1000W can be obtained by passing MAM1005H and MAM1006H. In special cases MAM1004F or MAM1004H may be taken in place of MAM1005H; detailed rules are given under the entry for MAM1006H.

No student may register for more than one of MAM1000W, MAM1004F, MAM1004H, MAM1005H, MAM1006H, MAM1014F, MAM1015S, MAM1016S and STA1001F/S simultaneously.
Credit will not be given for more than one of MAM1004F, MAM1004H, MAM1005H, MAM1014F, MAM1015S, MAM1016S, STA1001F and STA1001S. Credit for STA1001F/S or any first-year half course in Mathematics falls away on obtaining credit for MAM1000W.

**Course outlines:**

**MAM1000W  MATHEMATICS I**

**Convenor:** To be advised.

**Entrance requirements:** Registration for MAM1000W in February will be provisional, and will only be confirmed at the beginning of the second quarter. A pass in Mathematics with at least 50% on the Higher Grade (or at least a D symbol at A-level) is normally required for such provisional registration. Students who have not reached a satisfactory level (to be defined at the beginning of the course) at the end of the first quarter will have their provisional registration for MAM1000W cancelled, but will be allowed to register for MAM1005H at the beginning of the second quarter.

**Course outline:**
Differential and integral calculus of functions of one variable, differential equations, partial derivatives, vector geometry, matrix algebra, complex numbers, Taylor series.

**Tutorials:** One 2-hour tutorial per week.

**DP requirements:**
Minimum of 30% for class tests, and satisfactory tutorial work.

**Assessment:**
Year mark counts 33.3%; two no longer than 3-hour papers written in October/November make up the balance.

**MAM1004F  MATHEMATICS 1004**

**Convenor:** To be advised.

**Entrance requirements:** The normal minimum requirement is a pass in Mathematics at the Higher Grade or a pass with at least 80% at the Standard Grade (or at least an E symbol at A-level). Registration for MAM1004F in February will be provisional, however, and will only be confirmed at the beginning of the second quarter. Students who have not reached a satisfactory level (to be defined at the beginning of the course) at the end of the first quarter will have their provisional registration for MAM1004F cancelled, but will be allowed to register for MAM1004H (see below) at the beginning of the second quarter. Students who have been admitted to MAM1004F without a background of Higher Grade Mathematics are expected to make up the difference between the syllabuses for themselves.

**Course outline:**

**Tutorials:** One per week, Monday or Wednesday afternoon, 6th and 7th period.

**DP requirements:**
Minimum of 30% in class tests, and at least 80% attendance at tutorials.

**Assessment:**
Year mark counts up to 40%; one no longer than 3-hour paper written in June makes up the balance.

**MAM1004H  MATHEMATICS 1004**

**Convenor:** To be advised.

**Entrance requirements:** A pass in Mathematics at the Higher Grade, or a pass with at least 80% at
the Standard Grade (or at least an E symbol at A-level). Students whose provisional registration for MAM1004F (see above) has been cancelled will be allowed to register for MAM1004H at the beginning of the second quarter.

**Course outline:**
This course is intended for students who would otherwise register for MAM1004F, but who are not likely to pass that course by the end of the first semester. The syllabus is the same as for MAM1004F, but is spread over two semesters.

**Tutorials:** Times to be arranged; one double period per week.

**DP requirements:** As for MAM1004F.

**Assessment:**
Year mark counts up to 40%; one no longer than 3-hour paper written in October/November makes up the balance.

---

**MAM1005H MATHEMATICS 1005**

**Convenor:** To be advised.

**Entrance requirements:** A pass in Mathematics at the Higher Grade or a pass with at least 80% at the Standard Grade (or at least an E symbol at A-level). All students admitted to the General Entry Programme in Science must register for MAM1005H. In addition, students attending the full-year courses in Mathematics may be placed onto MAM1005H at the end of the first quarter. Other students who meet the entrance requirements will be permitted to register for MAM1005H as long as there is capacity on the course, and such students must have their registration approved by the relevant Student Advisor.

**Course outline:**
Differential and integral calculus of functions of one variable.

**Tutorials:** Friday, 1st period.

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 35% in class tests and satisfactory workshop and tutorial work.

**Assessment:**
Year mark counts up to 40%; one no longer than 3-hour paper written in October/November makes up the balance.

---

**MAM1006H MATHEMATICS 1006**

**Convenor:** To be advised.

**Entrance requirements:** MAM1005H or a pass with at least 65% in MAM1004F or MAM1004H. Students who have passed MAM1004F or MAM1004H with less than 65% and who wish to register for MAM1006H will be required to write and pass the examination paper for MAM1005H in November or the supplementary examination paper in January before they are allowed to register for MAM1006H. Such students are required to inform the course co-ordinator for MAM1005H by 1 September or 1 December, respectively, of their intention to write the examination and at the same time obtain information about the reading to be done as preparation for the examination.

**Course outline:**
The course consists of those topics in the MAM1000W syllabus that were not covered in MAM1005H in the previous year.

**Tutorials:** Two tutorials per week in 1st period.

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 35% in class tests and very satisfactory attendance at lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:**
Year mark counts up to 40% of the final mark; one no longer than 3-hour examination written in October/November makes up the balance.
**MAM1014F** QUANTITATIVE LITERACY FOR HUMANITIES  
*NOTE: Details subject to change.*  
**Convenor:** Ms S Rughubar-Reddy.  
**Entrance requirements:** None (but exposure to Matric Mathematics is required). This course is intended primarily for students in the extended degree programme. Other students may be admitted at the discretion of the course convenor.  
**Course outline:**  
This course is intended to provide Humanities students with the necessary Mathematical Literacy to be able to understand and express appropriate quantitative ideas. The aim of this course is to give students an appreciation and an understanding of mathematical and statistical ideas within real life, social science and environmental contexts. Course material will start from real-life situations and extract general concepts and principles using a problem-solving approach. For example: percentages; ratios; interest and other concepts of finance; interpretation of graphs; manipulation of data; computer skills such as the use of spreadsheets.  
The lectures will be conducted in the form of workshop/lectures: the aim is to create a learning environment based on group-work and problem-solving. Written assignments will be set to encourage students to explore their own understanding of mathematical and statistical ideas within context.  
**DP requirements:**  
Through the submission of computer tutorials, homework assignments and tests, participants will build up a class record. A minimum of 40% for this year-mark and a minimum of 75% attendance at lectures and computer laboratory periods will be required as a DP for admission to the examination.  
**Assessment:**  
There will be an examination consisting of two papers (Paper One: Laboratory; and Paper Two: Written) in June. The class record will count 50% of the final mark.  
*NOTE: Credit will not be given for both this course and MAM1013F/S.*

**MAM1015S** INTRODUCTORY MATHEMATICS FOR QUANTITATIVE SOCIAL SCIENCES  
*NOTE: Details subject to change.*  
**Convenor:** Mr J Jaftha.  
**Entrance requirements:** A minimum of 45% for MAM1014F.  
**Course outline:**  
This course follows on from MAM1014F and is intended to provide Humanities students with the necessary Mathematical Literacy to be able to continue with studies in Economics. The aim of this course is to give students an appreciation and an understanding of mathematical and statistical ideas within appropriate contexts. The effective use of spreadsheets will be promoted. The course will provide students with the necessary pre-calculus algebra to be able to undertake a subsequent introductory course in calculus.  
The lectures will be conducted in the form of workshop/lectures: the aim is to create a learning environment based on group-work and problem-solving.  
**DP requirements:**  
Through the submission of computer tutorials, homework assignments and tests, participants will build up a class record. A minimum of 40% for the class record and a minimum of 75% attendance at lectures and computer laboratory periods will be required as a DP for admission to the examination.  
**Assessment:**  
There will be an examination consisting of two papers (Paper One: Laboratory; and Paper Two: Written) in November. The class record will count 50% of the final mark.
MATHEMATICS AND APPLIED MATHEMATICS

MAM1016S QUANTITATIVE LITERACY FOR SOCIAL SCIENCE

NOTE: Details subject to change.

Convenor: Ms S Rughubar-Reddy.

Entrance requirements: A minimum of 45% for MAM1014F.

Course outline:
This course follows on from MAM1014F and is intended to provide Humanities students with the necessary Mathematical Literacy to be able to continue with studies in Quantitative Social Sciences, such as Psychology and Sociology. The aim of this course is to give students an appreciation and an understanding of mathematical and statistical ideas within appropriate contexts. The effective use of spreadsheets for data analysis and representation will be promoted.

The lectures will be conducted in the form of workshop/lectures: the aim is to create a learning environment based on group-work and problem-solving. Written assignments will be set to encourage students to explore their own understanding of mathematical and statistical ideas within context.

DP requirements:
Through the submission of computer tutorials, homework assignments and tests, participants will build up a class record. A minimum of 40% for the class record and a minimum of 75% attendance at lectures and computer laboratory periods will be required as a DP for admission to the examination.

Assessment:
There will be an examination consisting of two papers (Paper One: Laboratory; and Paper Two: Written) in November. The class record will count 50% of the final mark.

For second-year and subsequent courses, please refer to the Faculty of Science Handbook.
MUSIC    159

SOUTH AFRICAN COLLEGE OF MUSIC
(incorporating the School of Dance and Opera School)

The South African College of Music is a University department offering training in music and
dance. Music options include orchestral instruments, piano, voice, African music, jazz and a variety
of theoretical subjects, including History, Theory and Composition. Dance options include academic
and practical courses in African dance, classical ballet and contemporary dance streams, with
intensive studies in performance, choreography, dance notation, dance history and dance
musicology.

The department includes sections devoted to opera (the Opera School) and dance (the School of
Dance). The College and its Schools are located in the Lower Campus in Woolsack Drive in a
complex of buildings around Strubenholm, the home of the College since the 1920s.

Professor and Director:
Peter Klatzow, DMus Cape Town - Composition

Music (including Opera)

The College of Music is located in Woolsack Drive, Rosebank (Lower Campus).
The letter code of the College is MUZ.
The College of Music can be contacted by email at sheila.taylor@uct.ac.za.

Professors:
Angelo Gobbato, BSc(Hons) DMus (hc) Cape Town LTCL - Director of the UCT Opera School
Michael Rossi, MM DMA New England Conservatory of Music - Jazz Studies

Associate Professors:
Farida Bacharova, BMus Gnesin Music College Moscow MMus Moscow Conservatory - Strings
Michael Campbell, BMus (Jazz Studies) North Texas MMus DMus Cape Town - Jazz Studies
Virginia Davids, PLM Stell - Singing
François du Toit, BMus(Hons) Cape Town ATCL LTCL FTCL UPLM Solistenklassendiplom
   Hannover - Piano
Graham Fitch, GRSM(Hons) ARCM MMus Manhattan - Piano
Sidwill Hartman, PDO Cape Town Professional Studies Juilliard - Singing
Anri Herbst, BMus(Hons) UFS MMus DPhil Stell UPLM - Music Education and Postgraduate
   Studies
Hendrik Hofmeyr, MMus DMus Cape Town - Musicology
Franklin Larey, BA(Mus) STD UWC MMus Artist Diploma DMA Cincinnati LRSM LTCL - Piano
Brad Liebl, MM DMA Cincinnati - Singing
Andrew Lilley, PhD Cape Town - Jazz Studies

Senior Lecturers:
Darryl Andrews, BMus(Hons) Cape Town - Jazz Studies
Morné Bezuidenhout, DMus Unisa LTCL - Musicology
Michael Nixon, MA Wesleyan University - Ethnomusicology

Lecturers:
Sylvia Bruinders, MA Wesleyan University - Ethnomusicology
Abigail Petersen, BMus MMus Cape Town - Jazz Singing
Dizu Plaatjies, BMus(Hons) Cape Town - African Music
Jason Reolon, BMus Cape Town - Jazz Piano
Becky Steltzner, MMus USC - Woodwind Studies
Patrick Tikolo, PDO Cape Town MMus Artist Diploma SMU Dallas - Singing
Music Student Advisors:
Michael Campbell
Angelo Gobbato
Sidwill Hartman
Peter Klatzow
Michael Nixon
Becky Steltzner

Senior Technical Officer:
Robert Johnson

Concerts Coordinator:
Gillian Lindner

Administrative Officer:
Angelisa Scheepers

Administrative Assistant:
Sheila Taylor, MSc(Med) Cape Town (mornings)

Secretary:
Lisa Diamond, BSocSc Cape Town (afternoons)

Listening and Computer Laboratory Officer:
Paul Sedres

Senior Departmental Assistant:
Neville Hartzenberg

Technical Assistant:
Samuel Kruger

Receptionist:
Charles Potgieter, Snr

Departmental Assistant:
Charles Potgieter, Jnr

W H Bell Music Library

Librarian in Charge:
Julie Strauss, B(Bibl) Potchefstroom HDE (Postgrad) Unisa
NOTES:
1. No student will be permitted to major in both Jazz Studies and Music.
2. Each major consists of a group of core courses plus a group of elective courses.

### Requirements for a major in Jazz Studies (JAZ):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Core courses:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Instrument B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument B2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument B3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLUS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2. One of the following groups:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1343W Jazz Improvisation I*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2343W Jazz Improvisation II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3343W Jazz Improvisation III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1339W History of Jazz I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2339W History of Jazz II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2345W Jazz Styles and Analysis I*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1363W Theory of Jazz I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2363W Theory of Jazz II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1341W Jazz Arrangement I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Applicants must pass a test in the theory of jazz

### Requirements for a major in Music (MUZ):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Core courses:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1340W History of Music I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2340W History of Music II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3340W History of Music III</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLUS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2. One of the following groups:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1351W Music Theory and Analysis I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2351W Music Theory and Analysis II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3351W Music Theory and Analysis III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument B2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument B3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1367F Worlds of Music I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2367S Worlds of Music II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3367F Worlds of Music III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1322F African Music I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2322S African Music II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3322F African Music III</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Entrance requirements:

Students registering for General Degrees who wish to take courses established in the South African College of Music must fulfil the following entrance requirements:

(i) One of the following:
   (a) 60% (Higher grade) or 70% (Standard grade) in Music at the Senior Certificate or equivalent examination;
OR
(b) A pass in the Grade V Theory of Music examination and Grade VII practical examination of the University of South Africa or in examinations recognised by Senate as equivalent;

OR
(c) Satisfies the Admission Board of the SA College of Music by practical audition and theory examination that he/she can register for the courses with a reasonable expectation of successfully completing the courses in the period required in terms of Faculty rules.

(ii) Students must pass a Theory of Music Entrance Test.
(iii) For entrance to practical courses (Instrument B1 or B2 or B3, and MUZ1343W Jazz Improvisation I), an audition will be required.

Course outlines:

MUZ1322F  AFRICAN MUSIC I
Semester course, three lectures per week.
Course co-ordinator: M Nixon.
Course outline:
An introduction to the learning and understanding of various kinds of African musics. Includes a survey of music in Africa.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.
Assessment: Tests and assignments 50%; 2-hour written and listening examination at end of semester 50%.

MUZ2322S  AFRICAN MUSIC II
Semester course, three lectures per week.
Course co-ordinator: S Bruinders.
Enterance requirements: A pass in African Music I.
Course outline:
A study of selected topics in African music.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.
Assessment: Tests and assignments 50%; 2-hour written and listening examination at end of semester 50%.

MUZ3322F  AFRICAN MUSIC III
Semester course, three lectures per week.
Course co-ordinator: M Nixon.
Enterance requirements: A pass in African Music II.
Course outline:
A study of selected topics in African music.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.
Assessment: Tests and assignments 50%; 2-hour written and listening examination at end of semester 50%.

MUZ1339W, MUZ2339W  HISTORY OF JAZZ I & II
Whole-year courses, 2 periods per week.
Course co-ordinator: Associate Professor M Campbell.
Entrance requirements: A pass in the first course for the second year.

Course outline:
The history of Jazz will be studied from the time of its inception up to the present time. Tests and assignments will be given throughout the year.

DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.

Assessment: Tests and assignments 50%; 2-hour written examination in October/November 50%.

MUZ1340W  HISTORY OF MUSIC I
Whole-year course, 2 periods per week.
Course co-ordinator: Dr M Bezuidenhout.
Course outline:
This course concerns the music of the seventeenth, eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries. The roles of major figures, significant compositions, influential social, technical and aesthetic factors will be considered.

DP requirements: Due submission of all assigned work; at least 80% attendance at lectures.

Assessment: Two essays 15% each; 1-hour listening test in June 10%; 2-hour written test in June 25%; 1-hour listening test in November 10%; 2-hour written examination in October/November 25%.

MUZ2340W  HISTORY OF MUSIC II
Whole-year course, 2 periods per week.
Course co-ordinator: Associate Professor H Hofmeyr.
Entrance requirements: A pass in History of Music I.
Course outline:
A continuation of the overview begun in History of Music I, but concerned with the remainder of the nineteenth century. Once more, the approach will involve consideration of the principal figures, works and forces that distinguished the period.

DP requirements: Due submission of all assigned work; at least 80% attendance at lectures.

Assessment: Two essays 15% each; 1-hour listening test in June 10%; 2-hour written examination in June 25%; 1-hour listening test in November 10%; 2-hour written examination in October/November 25%.

MUZ3340W  HISTORY OF MUSIC III
Whole-year course, 2 periods per week.
Course co-ordinator: Professor P Klatzow.
Entrance requirements: A pass in History of Music II.
Course outline:
History of Music III is devoted to the study of 20th century music. The study will focus on major figures and developments and there is a section dealing with South African composers.

DP requirements: Due submission of completed essays.
Assessment: Two essays 15% each; 1-hour listening test in June 10%; 2-hour written examination in June 25%; 1-hour listening test in November 10%; 2-hour written examination in October/November 25%.

MUZ1341W  JAZZ ARRANGEMENT I
Whole-year course, 2 periods per week plus tutorials.
Course co-ordinator: D Andrews.
Entrance requirements: A pass in Theory of Jazz I and Theory of Jazz II.
Course outline:
Students will develop their ability to orchestrate and prepare arrangements for small groups in the Jazz style, with particular emphasis on standard Jazz tunes. Projects will be prepared for performance.
Work that has been done without adequate supervision from a staff member will not be acceptable for examination.

DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures and tutorials and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.

Assessment: Tests and assignments 30%; projects 50%; 2-hour written examination October/November 20%.

MUZ1343W, MUZ2343W, MUZ3343W  JAZZ IMPROVISATION I, II & III
Whole-year courses, 2 periods per week.
Course co-ordinator: Professor M Rossi.
Entrance requirements: A pass in Jazz Improvisation I for Jazz Improvisation II, etc.
Course outline:
First year: Fundamental studies in the common practice of Jazz Improvisation. Regular assignments and tests will be given in individual and group performance.
Second year: Continuation of first-year material, progressing to more advanced concepts.
Third year: Intermediate- to advanced-level.

DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at classes and the completion of all tests and assignments.
Assessment:
First year: year work and assignments 20%; practical test in June 30%; practical test in October/November 50%.
Second year: year work and assignments 20%; practical test in June 30%; practical examination in October/November 50%.
Third year: year work and assignments 20%; practical test in June 30%; practical test in October/November 50%.

MUZ2345W  JAZZ STYLES AND ANALYSIS I
Whole-year course, 1 lecture per week.
Course co-ordinator: Professor M Rossi.
Entrance requirements: A pass in History of Jazz I, and a pass in a test in the theory of jazz.
Course outline:
An in-depth study of Jazz styles from the 1920s to the present. Includes analysis of transcribed solos as recorded by major jazz artists, analysis of stylistic traits, development of aural recognition of contemporary harmonic and linear vocabularies.

DP requirements: At least 75% attendance at lectures, completion of assigned classwork.
Assessment: Assignments and tests 50%; October/November one 2-hour written examination 50%.

MUZ1351W  MUSIC THEORY AND ANALYSIS I
Whole-year course, 2 lectures and 2 tutorials per week.
Course co-ordinator: To be announced.
Entrance requirements: A pass in the written entrance examination of the College of Music, which consists of one paper of a standard equivalent to the final paper of the Foundation Music Theory course of the University of Cape Town.
Course outline:
The objectives of this course are to provide the student with an in-depth knowledge of harmonic and contrapuntal procedures and the use of formal structures during the Baroque period including, but
not necessarily limited to:

1. The use of figured bass and its application in works such as recitatives, arias, trio sonatas and chorale harmonisations. On completion of the course, students will be able to realise a given figured bass accurately, provide a figured bass for a given melodic line and analyse, identify and write chord progressions as encountered in the works studied.

2. The principles of strict imitative counterpoint, including the writing and analysis of fugue subjects and answers (non-modulatory, real and tonal), and canon at the octave. On completion of the course, students will be able to write an answer to a given fugue subject, write a countersubject invertible at the octave, and use a given motif to write a finite canon at the octave.

3. The use of binary, ternary and ritornello-type forms in the Baroque period. On completion of the course, students will be able to identify and describe the use of these formal structures, including the use of modulation to articulate structure.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance; 50% year mark for prescribed coursework, tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%, 2-hour examination 50%.

---

**MUZ2351W MUSIC THEORY AND ANALYSIS II**
Whole-year course, 2 lectures and 2 tutorials per week.

**Course co-ordinator:** To be announced.

**Entrance requirements:** A pass in Music Theory and Analysis I.

**Course outline:**
The objectives of this course are to provide the student with an in-depth knowledge of harmonic and contrapuntal procedures and the use of formal structures during the Classical and Romantic period including, but not necessarily limited to:

1. The use of functional harmony and its application in works such as sonatas, symphonies and vocal works. On completion of the course, students will be able to identify, analyse and write chord progressions as encountered in the works studied.

2. The use of contrapuntal procedures, including the writing and analysis of fugue subjects and answers (non-modulatory, real and tonal), and imitative counterpoint in works such as string quartets. On completion of the course, students will be able to write a fughetta on a given subject, and identify and analyse imitative procedures in selected works.

3. The use of formal structures in the Classical - Romantic period including binary, ternary, rondo and sonata and variation form, as well as the application of cyclic principles in selected works. On completion of the course, students will be able to identify and describe the use of these formal structures in the Classical and Romantic period, including the use of modulation to articulate structure.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance; 50% year mark for prescribed coursework, tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%, 2-hour examination 50%.

---

**MUZ3351W MUSIC THEORY AND ANALYSIS III**
Whole-year course, 2 lectures and 2 tutorials per week.

**Course co-ordinator:** Associate Professor H Hofmeyr.

**Entrance requirements:** A pass in Music Theory and Analysis II.

**Course outline:**
The objectives of this course are to provide the student with an overview of some of the main procedures of harmonic procedures, compositional devices, contrapuntal techniques and the use of formal structures during the Romantic period and the first half of the twentieth century, including, but not necessarily limited to:
1. The use of chromatic and non-tonal harmony and its application in works such as sonatas, symphonies and Lieder. On completion of the course, students will be able to identify, analyse, comment on and write chord progressions as encountered in the works studied.

2. The use of compositional devices, including techniques such as variation and the application of cyclic principles in selected works. On completion of the course, students will be able to identify and comment on such procedures in selected works.

In the latter part of the course a selection of works by South African composers will be analysed.

**DP requirements:** Completion of both assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; 2-hour examination 50%.

---

**MUZ1363W, MUZ2363W  THEORY OF JAZZ I & II**

Whole-year courses, 2 periods per week.

**Course co-ordinators:** Associate Professor M Campbell and D Andrews.

**Entrance requirements:** A pass in the first year for the second year.

**Course outline:**
The study of Jazz Theory in the common practice style.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 50%; 2-hour examination in October/November 50%.

---

**MUZ1367F  WORLDS OF MUSIC I**

Semester course, 3 periods per week.

**Course co-ordinator:** S Bruinders.

**Course outline:**
An introduction to the study of music as culture, and a survey of selected music cultures of the world.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 50%; 2-hour written and listening examination at end of semester 50%.

---

**MUZ2367S  WORLDS OF MUSIC II**

Semester course, 3 periods per week.

**Course co-ordinator:** M Nixon.

**Entrance requirements:** A pass in Worlds of Music I.

**Course outline:**
Continues the study of music as culture, and surveys selected music cultures of the world. This course includes fieldwork and a research paper.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 50%; 2-hour written and listening examination at end of semester 50%.

---

**MUZ3367F  WORLDS OF MUSIC III**

Semester course, 3 periods per week.

**Course co-ordinator:** M Nixon.

**Entrance requirements:** A pass in Worlds of Music II.
Course outline:
Continues the study of music as culture, and surveys selected music cultures of the world. The course includes fieldwork and a research paper.

DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.
Assessment: Tests and assignments 50%; 2-hour written and listening examination at end of semester 50%.

School of Dance
The School of Dance is located in Woolsack Drive, Rosebank (Lower Campus) and can be contacted by email at angie.pearson@uct.ac.za.

The School of Dance offers degree, diploma and certificate programmes in dance, incorporating a range of academic and practical courses in African dance, classical ballet and contemporary dance streams. Depending on their choice of major courses, graduates find employment in professional dance companies, in the Western Cape Education Dept and in other dance-related careers. Courses offered include intensive studies in performance, choreography, dance notation, dance history and dance musicology.

Head of the School of Dance:
To be announced

Associate Professor:
Elizabeth Triegaardt, BSc Cape Town ARAD

Senior Lecturers:
Dianne Cheesman, BPhil(Hons) Dance Durham ARAD Grade Examiner
Danie Fourie, BMus Cape Town UPLM
Sharon Friedman, BA(Hons) History Cape Town STD (JCE)

Lecturers:
Eduard Greyling, FI Chor Advanced Teacher's Dip Benesh DMus(Dance) Cape Town
Lindy Raizenberg, Dip Ballet MMus(Dance) Cape Town
Maxwell Xolani Rani, BMus(Dance) Cape Town

Part-time Lecturers:
Mavis Becker, SDS International Examiner - Spanish Dance
Ilona Frege, BA Stell BA(Hons) Rhodes - Choreographic Studies and Teaching Methodology
Christy Johnson, Dip Ballet BMus(Hons) Cape Town - Dance Anatomy
Barbara Lewis, FISTD (Final Diploma) - Cecchetti Ballet
Yarisha Singh, BMus(Dance) Cape Town - Contemporary Dance
Guest teachers include members of the Cape Town City Ballet and other dance professionals.

Accompanist:
Ally van Oordt, UTLM ULSM

Administrative Assistant:
Angie Pearson
### Requirements for a major in Dance (DAN):

**NOTES:**

1. An audition will be required for admission to Classical Ballet, Contemporary Dance or African Dance.
2. Students must select one group from each of A and B.
3. If Dance History is selected from Group A, Dance Musicology must be selected from Group B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A. One of the following groups:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1806W Classical Ballet I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2806W Classical Ballet II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3806W Classical Ballet III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1808W Contemporary Dance I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2808W Contemporary Dance II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3808W Contemporary Dance III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1802W African Dance Practice I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2802W African Dance Practice II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3802W African Dance Practice III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1810W Dance History I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2810W Dance History II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3810W Dance History III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1803W African Dance Principles I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2803W African Dance Principles II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3803W African Dance Principles III</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLUS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B. One of the following groups:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1813W Dance Principles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1814W Dance Teaching Method I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2814W Dance Teaching Method II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1805W Choreographic Studies I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2805W Choreographic Studies II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3805W Choreographic Studies III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1322F African Music I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2322S African Music II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3322F African Music III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1811W Dance Musicology I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2811W Dance Musicology II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3811W Dance Musicology III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1810W Dance History I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2810W Dance History II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3810W Dance History III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ1803W African Dance Principles I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ2803W African Dance Principles II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUZ3803W African Dance Principles III</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Course outlines:**

**MUZ2802W  AFRICAN DANCE PRACTICE II**
Second-year, whole-year course. Minimum four classes per week.
**Convenor:** M X Rani.
**Entrance requirements:** Students must have completed MUZ1803W African Dance Principles I (was BAL1043W) with the attainment of a 50% pass upon completion of the yearly course.
**Course outline:**
This course gives the basic and intense techniques of Intsika: an open-ended Pan African dance technique that seeks to develop the human body in a holistic manner incorporating mind, body and spirit. The technique was created in 2002 by Maxwell Xolani Rani and has been developing ever since. The technique draws from key movements from all over the African continent as well as the diaspora. The emphasis on the second-year practical level is based on understanding the amalgamation of music to the movements. The significance of flexibility, body alignment and the aesthetics of African Dance qualities are highlighted in this course.
**DP requirements:** At least 90% attendance at lectures, and submission of all required written works. Satisfactory participation in the work of the class including required reading.
**Assessment:** Studio dance participation (practical component) 60%; essays in June and November 10%; media review 5%; examinations in June and November (theoretical component) 25%.

**MUZ3802W  AFRICAN DANCE PRACTICE III**
Third-year, whole-year course. Minimum four classes per week.
**Convenor:** M X Rani.
**Entrance requirements:** Students must have completed MUZ1803W African Dance Principles I (was BAL1043W) with the attainment of a 50% pass upon completion of the yearly course.
**Course outline:**
This course is the first of technique/percussion classes taught in the School of Dance at UCT. Intsika dance technique is an open-ended Pan African dance technique that seeks to develop the human body in a holistic manner incorporating mind, body and spirit. The technique was created in 2002 by Maxwell Xolani Rani and has been developing ever since. The technique draws from key movements from all over the African continent as well as the diaspora. The philosophy behind the technique is that there are inherent techniques in the thousands of dance cultures that exist in Africa. Intsika, which literally means “a pillar” or “strength” in Xhosa language, comprises core movements from regions and dances symbolising a cultural pattern(s) in Africa or the diaspora. The movements are then stylised in a mode that best addresses a studio presentation and specific needs of the students usually trained in another discipline of dance.
**DP requirements:** At least 90% attendance at lectures, and submission of all required written works. Satisfactory participation in the work of the class including required reading.
**Assessment:** Studio dance participation (practical component) 60%; essays in June and November 10%; media review 5%; examinations in June and November (theoretical component) 25%.

**MUZ1803W  AFRICAN DANCE PRINCIPLES I (was BAL1043W)**
First-year, whole-year course.
**Convenor:** M X Rani.
**Entrance requirements:** None.
**Course outline:**
This course provides a survey of the 'African' dances across the continent to promote understanding of the way in which dance evolves with reference to socio-political and economic factors. Concerned with the future of African dance in South Africa, it will include focus on the understanding of the concept of 'fusion' and the merging of different dance forms into a language that is appropriate for the diversity found in South Africa.
**DP requirements:** At least 90% attendance at lectures, and submission of all required written work. Satisfactory participation in the work of the class including required reading.

**Assessment:** Written assignments, one per semester, 40%; one 2-hour written examination in June 30%; one 2-hour written examination in October/November 30%.

**MUZ2803W** **AFRICAN DANCE PRINCIPLES II** (was BAL2043W)
Second-year, whole-year course. Minimum 2 hours per week.

**Convenor:** M X Rani.

**Entrance requirements:** Students must have completed MUZ1803W African Dance Principles I (was BAL1043W) with the attainment of at least 50% pass on completion of the course.

**Course outline:**
This course focuses on the theoretical components of socio-political ‘correctness’ in the Arts. The course aims to encourage students to view an African conception of the world: aesthetics, senses, canons and characteristics. The role of dance in cultural identity, modernity in education will be considered.

**DP requirements:** At least 90% attendance at lectures, and submission of all required written work. Satisfactory participation in the work of the class including required reading.

**Assessment:** Essays 25%; media review 5%; examinations in June and November (theoretical component) 70%.

--

**MUZ3803W** **AFRICAN DANCE PRINCIPLES III** (was BAL3043W)
Third-year, whole-year course. Minimum 3 hours per week.

**Convenor:** M X Rani.

**Entrance requirements:** Students must have completed MUZ2803W African Dance Principles II (was BAL2043W) with the attainment of at least 50% pass on completion of the course.

**Course outline:**
This course focuses on the dynamics of African traditional dance. This includes the context of African traditional dance and African religious dance. The problems of literal documentation in African dance studies will be discussed.

The dynamics of African religious dances; dance as worship; the state of religious dances in contemporary times; traditional African dance in context; commonalities in African dance: an aesthetic foundation, the problem of literal documentation in African dance studies, current issues and trends pertaining to the advent of neo-traditional genres of music and dance; Destination: a Rhythm Nation – a South African dance writer’s perspective; Dance theatre: the people, the passion, the politics of dancing towards a new cultural order, are all themes to be explored.

**DP requirements:** At least 90% attendance at lectures, and submission of all required written work. Satisfactory participation in the work of the class including required reading.

**Assessment:** Essays 25%; media review 5%; examinations in June and November 70%.

--

**MUZ1322F** **AFRICAN MUSIC I**
First-semester course, three lectures per week.

**Course co-ordinator:** M Nixon.

**Course outline:**
An introduction to the learning and understanding of various kinds of African musics. Includes a survey of music in Africa.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 50%; 2-hour written and listening examination at end of semester 50%.
MUZ2322S  AFRICAN MUSIC II
Second-semester course, three lectures per week.
Course co-ordinator: S Bruinders.
Entrance requirements: A pass in African Music I.
Course outline: A study of selected topics in African music.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.
Assessment: Tests and assignments 50%; 2-hour written and listening examination at end of semester 50%.

MUZ3322F  AFRICAN MUSIC III
First-semester course, three lectures per week.
Course co-ordinator: M Nixon.
Entrance requirements: A pass in African Music II.
Course outline: A study of selected topics in African music.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.
Assessment: Tests and assignments 50%; 2-hour written and listening examination at end of semester 50%.

MUZ1805W  CHOREOGRAPHIC STUDIES I (was BAL1044W)
1 hour per week.
Convenor: L Raizenberg.
Entrance requirements: Acceptance into a practical Dance major (Classical Ballet, Contemporary Dance or African Dance).
Course outline:
Module 1 - Introduction to Theatre Technology - This module consists of 5 one-hour lectures held in the first semester and includes a visit to the Baxter Theatre Complex, Rondebosch. It covers technical aspects of the theatre with emphasis on stage terminology and the working of the theatre.
Module 2 - Choreography - This module consists of 8 one-hour lectures held in the second semester. The student will be introduced to the principles of choreography and will be expected to hand in a written essay of no less than 1000 words on a related subject.
DP requirements: At least 90% attendance at lectures. The submission of all written work and satisfactory participation in the practical component of the course.
Assessment:
Module 1 - One-hour paper written at the end of the module - 30%;
Module 2 - Practical assessment. Students must choreograph a short solo dance piece, using a student from the School of Dance, of no more than 2 minutes - 50%; written essay - 20%.

MUZ2805W  CHOREOGRAPHIC STUDIES II (was BAL2044W)
2 one-hour lectures per week.
Convenor: L Raizenberg.
Entrance requirements: A minimum of 50% in MUZ1805W Choreographic Studies I (was BAL1044W) in both modules 1 and 2.
Course outline:
Module 1 - Practical choreography - This is a first semester module. Lectures further develop the practical choreographic skills of the student. Emphasis is placed on solo and group choreographic construction. The module will encompass an in-depth exploration of the theatrical elements that are utilized in creating dance for theatre. The student must choreograph a dance work incorporating solo and ensemble groupings of no more than 6 minutes. A public examination performance is held at
Concert Venue, UCT School of Dance. The module also enables the student to experiment with simple lighting design.

Module 2 - Introduction to Academic Writing of Choreography - This module aims to introduce the choreography student to a critical understanding of the processes involved in choreography. Works from diverse choreographers such as Martha Graham, Merce Cunningham and George Balanchine will be discussed and analysed in essay form. The student will hand in 2 essays of 500 words. A third essay of 1500 words will provide a written assessment mark for this course.

**DP requirements:** At least 90% attendance at lectures. The submission of all written work and satisfactory participation in the practical component of the course.

**Assessment:**
Module 1 - Public examination performance end of 1st semester - 50%;
Module 2 - Evaluation of course work - 30%; written essay (1500 words) - 20%.

---

**MUZ3805W  CHOREOGRAPHIC STUDIES III (was BAL3044W)**
3 one-hour lectures per week.

**Convenor:** L Raizenberg.

**Entrance requirements:** A minimum of 60% in module 1 of MUZ2805W Choreographic Studies II (was BAL2044W).

**Course outline:**
Module 1 - Academic Writing of Choreography (Part 1) - This module encourages the student to explore, through theoretical research, choreographers and their dance works, in a clearly articulate manner. A written essay (no more than 2000 words) is to be submitted by the end of September of each year comprising a detailed analysis and discussion of at least two works of a selected choreographer.

Module 2 - Choreographic Performance - The student will choreograph an original dance work of no longer than 10 minutes using at least 5 dancers, to be performed in the Baxter Theatre Complex, Rondebosch, before the end of the 2nd semester. Rehearsals take place after working hours at the UCT School of Dance, by arrangement with the course convenor.

**DP requirements:** At least 90% attendance at lectures. The submission of all written work and satisfactory participation in the practical component of the course.

**Assessment:**
Module 1 - Academic writing course assessment - 30%; written essay (2000 words) - 15%;
Module 2 - Choreographic performance - 55%.

---

**MUZ1806W, MUZ2806W, MUZ3806W  CLASSICAL BALLET I, II & III**
(was BAL1026W, BAL2026W, BAL3026W)
8 hours per week (minimum).

**NOTE:** This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside of the usual University teaching terms, ie, from the first Monday in February to the end of the first week in December each year, including during vacation periods.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor E Triegaardt.

**Entrance requirements:**
For MUZ1806W: An audition
For MUZ2806W: MUZ1806W
For MUZ3806W: MUZ2806W

**Course outline:**
This course will be geared to the correction and extension of the technical standard of each student. The syllabus and teaching guide, designed by the staff of the Department, includes all aspects of classical technique and incorporates the basic principles of dance. Compulsory tutorials in the first two years will cover all aspects of anatomy relevant to dance. The requirement for the second-year tutorials is a pass in the first year. Both the tutorials and the practical examination must be passed.
Repertoire and pas de deux for selected students will be included in the course.

**DP requirements:** At least 90% attendance at lectures.

**Assessment:**
*Years I and II:* June practical examination 40%; June written examination 20%; October practical examination 40%.

*Year III:* June practical examination 40%; October practical examination 60%. Students choosing this as their major subject will, in their final year, be expected to present selected solos and ensemble pieces in public performance.

---

**MUZ1808W, MUZ2808W, MUZ3808W** CONTEMPORARY DANCE I, II & III  
(was BAL1020W, BAL2020W, BAL3020W)

Contemporary Dance I - Minimum 2 hours per week.
Contemporary Dance II and III - Minimum 5 hours per week.

**NOTE:** This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside of the usual University teaching terms, ie, from the first Monday in February to the end of the first week in December each year, including during vacation periods.

**Convenor:** S Friedman.

**Entrance requirements:**
- For MUZ1808W: An audition
- For MUZ2808W: MUZ1808W
- For MUZ3808W: MUZ2808W

**Course outline:**
In the first year students are introduced to the basic principles of Graham and Humphrey technique, and from the second year are exposed to a variety of different stylistic approaches. Improvisational and creative work are an integral part of the course.

The intention is to produce dancers who can move with confidence in any way that a choreographer may choose and proficiency in classical ballet remains a prerequisite. Compulsory tutorials in the first two years will cover basic dance anatomy and principles of contemporary dance. The requirement for the second-year tutorials is a pass in the first year. Both the tutorials and the practical examination must be passed.

**DP requirements:** At least 90% attendance at lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:**
*Year I:* March assessment 10%; June practical examination 40%; October practical examination 50%.

*Years II and III:* June practical examination 40%; October practical examination 60%. Students choosing this as their major subject will, in their final year, be expected to present selected solos and ensemble pieces in public performance.

---

**MUZ1810W** DANCE HISTORY I (was BAL1035W)

Minimum 4 hours per week.

**Convenor:** S Friedman.

**Entrance requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**
This course will present an overview of the development of classical ballet and modern dance from the Renaissance to the present day with reference to the socio-political and economic trends which informed these developments.

**DP requirements:**
At least 90% attendance at lectures and timeous submission of all essays.

**Assessment:** 3-hour written examination at conclusion of module A - 35%; 3-hour written examination at conclusion of module B - 35%; submission of 3 essays in the first semester - 30%.
MUZ2810W  DANCE HISTORY II (was BAL2035W)
Minimum 2 lectures per week in the first semester. Written assignments will continue in the second semester.

Convenor: S Friedman.

Entrance requirements: Dance History I.

Course outline:
This course examines themes selected from the overview presented in the first year. The themes are studied both in greater detail and depth. Particular attention is paid to trends in other art forms which have bearing on the topics, as well as socio-political and economic trends. Topics include: the development of modernism; the development of performance art in Europe; the Diaghilev era; and the development of American and German modern dance.

DP requirements: At least 90% attendance at tutorials and lectures and the submission of all set written work.

Assessment: 3-hour written examination at conclusion of module A - 30%; 3-hour written examination at conclusion of module B - 30%; submission of 3 essays in the first semester and 3 essays in the second semester 40%.

MUZ3810W  DANCE HISTORY III (was BAL3035W)

NOTE: Not all modules will necessarily be offered every year.

Convenor: S Friedman.

Entrance requirements: Dance History II.

Course outline:

1st Semester:
Historical Approaches. This aspect of the course falls under the Department of Historical Studies.

2nd Semester:
Reading course: This course requires the submission of at least 3 pieces of written work dealing with the following:
(a) Post-modern dance - Modern dance since the 1950s: a detailed examination of the emerging post-modern dance movement in America.
(b) The emergence of new expressionist dance in post-war Germany.
(c) The development of Black dance in America.

DP requirements: At least 90% attendance at lectures and tutorials and submission of all written work.

Assessment: June written examination 50%; essays from reading course 50%.

MUZ1811W  DANCE MUSICOLOGY I (was BAL1029W)
Minimum 3 lectures per week.

Convenor: D Fourie.

Entrance requirements: None.

The course purposes:
(i) A fundamental background in the theory and practice of Western music.
(ii) A contextual overview of the history of Western social and performance dance music from mediaeval times to the present.

Course outline:
(i) A rudimentary instruction in Western music theory and a practical component of elementary vocal and instrumental music.
(ii) A study of dance-related music of the Mediaeval, Renaissance and Baroque periods, 18th century Neo-classicism, 19th century Romanticism and 20th century Modernism.

DP requirements: At least 90% attendance at lectures, tutorials and practicals and the completion of all projects and tests.
**Assessment:** 2-hour written examination, first semester - 40%; 2-hour written examination, second semester - 30%; assignments: first and second semesters - 20%; performance: practical examination, second semester - 10%.

**MUZ2811W**  DANCE MUSICOLOGY II (was BAL2029W)
Minimum 3 lectures per week. Tutorials and practicals: 1 session per week.
**Convenor:** D Fourie.
**Entrance requirements:** Dance Musicology I.
**The course purposes:**
(i) A continued instruction in the theory and practice of music.
**Course outline:**
The four parts may be presented as modules:
(i) Romantic ballet music in the first half of the 19th century.
(ii) Classico-Romantic ballet music in the second half of the 19th century.
(iii) Post-Romantic and neo-Romantic dance music of the early 20th century.
(iv) The Diaghilev era.
**DP requirements:** At least 90% attendance at lectures, tutorials and practicals and the completion of all projects and tests.
**Assessment:** 2-hour written examination, first semester - 30%; 2-hour written examination, second semester - 30%; assignments: first and second semesters - 30%; performance: practical examination, second semester - 10%.

**MUZ3811W**  DANCE MUSICOLOGY III (was BAL3029W)
3 contact hours per week, including lectures, seminars and tutorials.
**Convenor:** D Fourie.
**Entrance requirements:** Dance Musicology II.
**The course purposes:**
In-depth examination of historical trends and developments. The subject spectrum and methodology is broadened to prepare the student for postgraduate work.
**Course outline:** The course is made up of four parts, constituted as follows:
1st Quarter:
Module 1: Post-Diaghilev European dance music.
2nd Quarter:
Module 2: 20th Century American dance music.
3rd Quarter:
Module 3: A survey of two of the following:
(i) South African Eurocentric dance music;
(ii) South African dance ethno-musicology;
(iii) Afro-Jazz dance music
**DP requirements:** At least 90% attendance at lectures and seminars and the completion of all projects and tests.
**Assessment:** 2-hour written examination, first semester - 30%; 2-hour written examination, second semester - 30%; assignments: first and second semesters - 30%; performance: practical examination, second semester - 10%.

**MUZ1813W**  DANCE PRINCIPLES (was BAL1032W)
Minimum 2 lectures per week.
**Convenor:** D Cheesman.
**Entrance requirements:** Acceptance into a practical Dance major (Classical Ballet, Contemporary Dance or African Dance).

**Course outline:**
This course strengthens the student's basic knowledge of dance principles as a preparation for teaching methods.

**DP requirements:** At least 90% attendance at all lectures.

**Assessment:** March written examination 50%; June written examination 50%.

---

**MUZ1814W, MUZ2814W  DANCE TEACHING METHOD I & II**
(was BAL1025W, BAL2025W)

Minimum 2 hours per week in the first year. Minimum 3 hours per week in the second year.

**Convenor:** D Cheesman.

**Entrance requirements:**
For MUZ1814W: MUZ1813W
For MUZ2814W: MUZ1814W

**Course outline:**
These are intensive whole-year courses designed to prepare the student for a career as a teacher of dance. Included in the courses are lectures in studio management, choreography for children, the psychology of teaching, child development, music for dance, oral communication and creative dance. MUZ2814W will include modules of Arts and Culture as required by the WCED curriculum as well as any other modules deemed beneficial for dance educators. In order to graduate in the Degree programme with Dance Teaching Method as a major or in the Dance Teacher's Diploma programme, students majoring in this course are required to be proficient in the teaching of at least two approved dance disciplines. Such proficiency must be demonstrated fully in the final year of the diploma or degree. All modules in the course must be passed. Students with Classical Ballet as their primary dance discipline are required to study the syllabi of the Royal Academy of Dancing and the Cecchetti Society in depth to prepare for the external examinations of the Academy and Society.

**DP requirements:** At least 90% attendance at lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:** June written examination 30%; October practical examination 40%; November written examination 30%.

---

For full details of all programmes and courses offered by the College of Music, please consult the Faculty of Humanities Performing and Creative Arts Handbook.
The Department is housed on the sixth floor of the Leslie Social Science Building. The letter code for the Department is PHI.
Departmental Internet: http://web.uct.ac.za/depts/philosophy
Departmental email: philosophy@uct.ac.za.

Professor and Head of Department:
D Benatar, BSoSc(Hons) PhD Cape Town

Professor:
M Passerin d'Entreves, BA(Hons) Lond MA PhD Boston

Associate Professor:
B Weiss, BSc(Hons) Durham PhD St Andrews

Senior Lecturers:
E Galgut, BA(Hons) MA Witwatersrand MA Cape Town PhD Rutgers
J Wanderer, BSc(Hons) PGCE MSc PhD Lond

Lecturer:
J Ritchie, BA(Hons) Oxon MPhil PhD Lond

Administrative Assistant:
C Gilbert, BA(Hons) HDE Cape Town

Requirements for a major in Philosophy (PHI):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHI1024F Introduction to Philosophy</td>
<td>PHI1010S Ethics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHI2017F Logic and Epistemology</td>
<td>PHI2012S Philosophy of Psychology and Mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third year</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHI3009F Contemporary Political Philosophy</td>
<td>PHI3010S Language, Thought and Reality</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For PHI2017F and PHI2012S: any four undergraduate courses. It is highly recommended but not required that students complete PHI2017F before PHI2012S.
(ii) For PHI3009F: PHI1010S (or PHI1024F) and PHI2039S (or any 2 other 2000-level PHI courses)
(iii) For PHI3010S: PHI1024F, PHI2017F and PHI2012S
Further information on the nature of academic philosophy and the interests and approach to the subject of the teaching staff of the UCT Philosophy Department is available from the departmental secretary.

Honours entry requirements:
(a) Faculty admission requirements as set out under Rule FH4 apply.
(b) Programme admission requirements are:
   • A high level of performance in a major in Philosophy, or its equivalent.
   • Some students may be required by the Department to take their Honours over an eighteen month or two-year period.
Acceptance is at the discretion of the Head of Department.
Course outlines:

**PHI1010S  ETHICS**
(NOTE: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term - please consult the Centre for Open Learning.)
First-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Professor D Benatar.

**Entrance requirements:** Students must have at least a D symbol in English first language higher grade. Students who do not meet this entry requirement may be admitted with the permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**
This course introduces students to moral philosophy and to the questions it asks. These may include:
What makes an action right? Is morality relative (to one's own views or to one's culture) or is it objective? What is the relationship between religion and ethics? What is it to be a good person?

**DP requirements:**
Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all written tests, and submission of all essays and assignments by due dates.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in October/November counts 60%.

**PHI1024F  INTRODUCTION TO PHILOSOPHY**
(NOTE: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term - please consult the Centre for Open Learning.)
First-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr J Wanderer.

**Entrance requirements:** As for PHI1010S.

**Course outline:**
This course is an introduction to philosophy that aims to make students more conscious, creative and critical in thinking about their own fundamental beliefs and values. Fundamental issues investigated include: the nature and possibility of knowledge, self-knowledge, the relationship between the mind and the body, the knowledge of other minds, whether we have free will, and whether life has a meaning. These issues are explored with the help of classical and contemporary philosophers, including Plato, Aristotle, Aquinas, Descartes, Hume, Kant, Hegel, Marx, Sartre and others.

**DP requirements:** As for PHI1010S.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 60%.

**PHI1025F  CRITICAL THINKING**
First-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr J Ritchie.

**Entrance requirements:** As for PHI1010S.

**Course outline:**
Why do we value our beliefs? We value them because we take them to be true and, as true, they are good guides. But how can we tell when a belief is true? Our only handle here is whether or not the belief is justified. So we aim to have beliefs that are justified. The course concentrates on the practical business of appraising justifications. Of course, we all routinely attempt to justify our beliefs and arrive at new beliefs on the basis of supposed justifications. But almost as routinely we are hoodwinked. The course aims to make you a better believer by making you more aware of the nature of justification, of the different sorts of justification and the pitfalls of each. At the end of it you will be less gullible and more able to explain just why a particular argument does or doesn't convince you.

**DP requirements:** As for PHI1010S.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one 2- or 3-hour examination in June counts 50%.
PHI2012S  PHILOSOPHY OF PSYCHOLOGY AND MIND
(NOTE: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term - please consult the Centre for Open Learning.)
Second-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr E Galgut.
Entrance requirements: Students must be in their second year of university studies and must have completed at least seven semester-long courses. It is highly recommended that students first complete PHI2017F.
Course outline:
The question of the nature of the mind and its relation to the body (e.g. the brain) is discussed at length, with attention given to dualism, behaviourism, physicalism and functionalism. Other topics which may be dealt with are the nature of action, free will and determinism and the problem of personal identity.
DP requirements: As for PHI1010S.
Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in October/November counts 60%.

PHI2016S  PHILOSOPHY OF ART AND LITERATURE
Second-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr E Galgut.
Entrance requirements: Students must be in their second year of university studies and must have completed at least seven semester-long courses.
Course outline:
This course will consider a variety of issues in contemporary philosophy of art and literature - a subject area also sometimes referred to as aesthetics. Among the issues that will be discussed are: the ontology of art (comparing literature, music, painting, etc); interpreting literary and other art works; the nature of metaphor; the relationship between art and morality; truth and sincerity as criteria of literary and artistic value; the definition (or general nature) of art and literature.
DP requirements: As for PHI1010S.
Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in October/November counts 60%.

PHI2017F  LOGIC AND EPISTEMOLOGY
(NOTE: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term - please consult the Centre for Open Learning.)
Second-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor B Weiss.
Entrance requirements: A student must have completed at least seven semester-long courses.
Course outline:
This course aims to develop some central philosophical tools and concepts surrounding the nature of reason and knowledge, and is divided into two parts. The first involves training in the techniques of correct reasoning, including those of formal logic. In the second, we turn our attention towards the theory of knowledge, including topics such as: truth, justification, the definition of knowledge and the role of experience and a priori reasoning in justifying our beliefs.
DP requirements: As for PHI1010S.
Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 60%.

PHI2037F  APPLIED ETHICS
Second-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Professor D Benatar.
Entrance requirements: Students must be in their second year of university studies and must have
completed at least seven semester-long courses.

**Course outline:**
The course involves the application of philosophical reasoning to real life practical and moral issues. It will be shown how rational argument can be brought to bear on the resolution of ethical dilemmas and difficult questions about what we ought to do. These may include issues concerning health care, business, the professions, the environment, or everyday life.

**DP requirements:** As for PHI1010S.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 60%.

---

**PHI2039S  CLASSICAL POLITICAL PHILOSOPHY**
Second-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Professor M Passerin d'Entreves.

**Entrance requirements:** Students must be in their second year of university studies and must have completed at least seven semester-long courses.

**Course outline:**
An introduction to the history and themes of classical political philosophy in the European tradition. It deals with figures such as Plato, Aristotle, Augustine, Aquinas, Machiavelli, Hobbes, Kant, Rousseau, Marx and Mill. Concepts that are relevant to contemporary issues will be highlighted.

**DP requirements:** As for PHI1010S.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in October/November counts 60%.

---

**PHI2040S  PHILOSOPHY OF SCIENCE**
Second-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Dr J Ritchie.

**Entrance requirements:** Students must be in their second year of university studies and must have completed at least seven semester-long courses.

**Course outline:**
The course aims to introduce the students to the epistemological, metaphysical and ethical issues that arise when science is considered from a philosophical perspective. Through the study of philosophers such as Popper, Kuhn and Feyerabend, among others, the following sorts of questions will be discussed: Do scientists employ a special method which sets them apart from non-scientists and gives their claims greater authority? Do electrons, genes and other entities that we can’t see or touch really exist? Are scientists inevitably influenced by political and moral agendas or can pure science be value free?

**DP requirements:** As for PHI1010S.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in October/November counts 60%.

---

**PHI3009F  CONTEMPORARY POLITICAL PHILOSOPHY**
Third-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Professor M Passerin d'Entreves.

**Entrance requirements:** PHI1010S (or PHI1024F) and PHI2039S (or any two other 2000-level PHI courses).

**Course outline:**
This course will focus on the key concepts and themes of contemporary political philosophy. It will examine the arguments advanced by liberals, communitarians, feminists and marxists on issues such as freedom, equality, justice and community. Among the authors discussed are Rawls, Dworkin, Walzer, Taylor, Cohen, Pateman, Okin and Young.

**DP requirements:** As for PHI1010S.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 60%.
PHI3010S  LANGUAGE, THOUGHT AND REALITY
Third-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor:  Associate Professor B Weiss.
Entrance requirements: PHI1024F, PHI2017F and PHI2012S.
Course outline:
This course explores aspects of the so-called 'linguistic turn' that is a characteristic feature of analytic philosophy in the past century. A central theme is the claim that an understanding of the relationship between the psychology of a thinker ('thought') and the world ('reality') is best achieved through consideration of questions surrounding the notion of meaning ('language'). Through an exploration of the writings of key figures such as Frege, Russell and Wittgenstein, the course will attempt to clarify the interrelationships between these three areas. Questions to be addressed include: How is it that certain sounds or marks can mean something? How can we have thoughts about something that does not exist? Is the world we know a 'ready-made world' or does the thinker play an active role?
DP requirements:  As for PHI1010S.
Assessment:  Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in October/November counts 60%.
The Department is housed on the 5th Floor of the Leslie Social Science Building. The Departmental letter code is POL. The Department can be contacted by email at politics@humanities.uct.ac.za. Website: www.uct.ac.za/depts/politics

Professor and Head of Department:
R A Schrire, BCom Cape Town MA American University Washington PhD Calif

Professors:
R G Cameron, MPubAd PhD Cape Town
R Mattes, MA Delaware PhD Illinois Urbana-Champaign
A Seegers, MA Pret PhD Loyola

Associate Professors:
A Butler, MA Oxon PhD Cantab
A Nash, MA Stell PhD Cape Town

Senior Lecturers:
J Akokpari, BA(Hons) Ghana MA International University of Japan PhD Dalhousie
T Reddy, BSocSc(Hons) Natal MA PhD University of Washington
M Simons, BA(Hons) Cape Town
H J Stephan, BA University of California Berkeley PhD Georgetown

Lecturers:
Z Jolobe, MSocSc Cape Town
G Naidoo, BBibl Hons(PubAd) MA(PubAd) Durban-Westville MBA Edinburgh PhD Pretoria

Administrative Officer:
Ms R Maree, PG Cert Management Studies Buckinghamshire

Administrative Assistant:
Ms J Polzin, BMus HDE(PG)Sec Cape Town

Senior Secretary:
Ms P Msutu, BTech Public Management CPUT

Majors:
The following majors can be taken as part of the general BA / BSocSc programme:

- POLITICS
- PUBLIC POLICY AND ADMINISTRATION

A double major combination of Politics and Public Policy and Administration is possible. **NOTE:** No 2000- or 3000-level POL course can be counted towards more than one major.
Requirements for a major in Politics (POL):

First year
POL1004F Introduction to Politics
POL1005S International Politics (was POL226F)

Second year
POL2038F Comparative Politics
POL2002S Political Theory

Third year
POL3032F Political Analysis
and ONE of the following:
POL3013S South African Political Thought and Traditions
POL3029S Third World Politics
POL3030F Conflict in World Politics

Prerequisites:
(i) For POL1005S: POL1004F
(ii) For POL2002S: POL2038F
(iii) For POL2038F: POL1005S
(iv) For POL3013S: POL3032F or POL3030F
(v) For POL3029S: POL3032F or POL3030F, or with special permission by the course convenor
(vi) For POL3030F: any two 2000-level Politics courses
(vii) For POL3032F: POL2002S

General comments on prerequisites:
The prerequisites for students registered for either the Commerce or the Humanities PPE programme (Philosophy, Politics and Economics) will differ slightly from those printed above. Please consult your Programme Convenor.

Requirements for a major in Public Policy and Administration (PPA):

First Semester
Second Semester

Second year
POL2022F State, Management and Administration
POL2037S Public and Development Administration

Third year
POL3037F Policy and Administration
POL3038S Urban Politics and Administration

Prerequisites:
(i) For POL2022F: POL1004F, POL1005S or any one 1000-level ECO, SOC, PHI, PSY, SAN or HST course
(ii) For POL2037S: POL2022F
(iii) For POL3037F: POL2037S
(iv) For POL3038S: POL3037F

Note on prerequisites and sub-minima:
Students should note the following:
(a) Even if a student achieves a particular grade, he/she must still obtain the entrance requirements to individual courses;
(b) The following sub-minima for examinations apply to all courses offered by the Department:
A student must obtain a minimum of 45% in the final examination to qualify for an overall pass (50%), 55% to qualify for an overall lower second (60 - 69%), 65% to qualify for an overall upper second (70 - 74%) and 70% to qualify for an overall first (75% and above).
Note on supplementary and re-examination procedures:
Opportunities for further examinations in the case of borderline failures may be provided before the results are finalised.

Course outlines:

**POL1004F** INTRODUCTION TO POLITICS  
(Nota: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term - please consult the Centre for Open Learning.)  
First-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.  
**Convenor:** Professor R Schrire.  
**Entrance requirements:** Faculty admission.  
**Course outline:**  
An introduction to key concepts in Political Studies including power, authority, legitimacy and class. These concepts will be applied to the study of comparative and international politics. The case study of South African politics constitutes an application of the conceptual and theoretical material to contemporary politics.  
**DP requirements:**  
Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments as stipulated in the course handbooks and at least two-thirds of tutorials.  
**Assessment:**  
Coursework counts 50%; June two-hour examination counts 50%.

**POL1005S** INTERNATIONAL POLITICS (was POL226F)  
First-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week, 1 tutorial per week.  
**Convenor:** Dr J Akokpari.  
**Entrance requirements:** POL1004F.  
**Course outline:**  
This course provides a survey of fundamental issues and concepts in international relations. In particular, it analyses the interface of globalisation and international politics and the extent to which this affects the behaviour of actors in the international system.  
**DP requirements:**  
Completion of all written work/tests and at least two-thirds of tutorials.  
**Assessment:**  
Coursework counts 50%; October/November two-hour examination counts 50%.

**POL2002S** POLITICAL THEORY  
Second-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week, 1 tutorial per week.  
**Convenor:** Associate Professor A Nash.  
**Entrance requirements:** POL2038F.  
**Course outline:**  
This course is an introduction to the fields of political theory, political philosophy and political ethics focussing on themes such as freedom, democracy, citizenship and the state.  
**DP requirements:**  
Completion of all written work and at least two-thirds of tutorials.  
**Assessment:**  
Coursework counts 50%; October/November two-hour examination counts 50%.

**POL2018F** SOUTH AFRICAN POLITICS II  
Second-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr T Reddy.

Entrance requirements: POL1004F and POL1005S, or by special permission of the course convenor.

Course outline:
This course introduces students to the political system of post-Apartheid South Africa, major policies, and some issues of contemporary debate. The first part of the course focuses on the transition process, and the main political institutions such as the constitution, executive, parliament, and the electoral and political party system. The second part examines a few significant themes of contemporary South African politics, viz. issues of identity, regional foreign policy and macro-economic policy.

DP requirements:
Completion of all written tests, essays, assignments and tutorials.

Assessment:
Coursework counts 50%; June two-hour examination counts 50%.

POL2022F  STATE, MANAGEMENT AND ADMINISTRATION
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week, 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor A Butler.
Entrance requirements: POL1004F/S, POL1005S or any 1000-level ECO, SOC, PHI, PSY, SAN or HST course.

Course outline:
This course introduces basic concepts, methods and theories related to the analysis of the modern South African state, its policy-making processes, and its public administration. The course explores the roles and growth of the public sector, the organisation of South African government under the new constitution, how policy is made and implemented, the interface between public and private sectors, and the human development and policy challenges facing the national government.

DP requirements:
Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

Assessment:
Coursework counts 50%; June two-hour examination counts 50%.

POL2034S  THE POLITICAL ECONOMY OF INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS
Second-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenors: Dr H Stephan and Ms M Simons.
Lecturers: Professor R Schrire and Dr H Stephan.
Entrance requirements: POL1004F or any two 2000-level ECO courses.

Course outline:
An introduction to the politics of international economic institutions and non-state economic actors. State responses to the global economy, including mercantilism and liberalism, are explored, and the implications of globalisation and changes in the nature of sovereignty are examined.

DP requirements:
Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

Assessment:
Coursework counts 50%; October/November two-hour examination counts 50%.

POL2036F  INTRODUCTORY POLITICAL ECONOMY
(Not offered in 2008)

POL2037S  PUBLIC AND DEVELOPMENT ADMINISTRATION
Second-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week.
Convenor: Dr G Naidoo.

**Entrance requirements:** POL2022F.

**Course outline:**
This course provides an introduction to concepts, ideas and theories of Public and Development Administration.

The first section of the course is concerned with an introduction to public administration and the work that shaped the current contours of the field. A comprehensive overview is given of public administration, public management and governance. There are at least four identifiable eras in the study of public administration which the course broadly focuses on: the classical approach (Scientific management, administrative theories and bureaucratic model); the neo-classical era (Human relations approach and behavioural systems school-motivation theories and leadership theories); the contemporary era (Systems approach and environmental approach) and the transcendental era (new public management paradigm).

The second section of the course introduces students to the changing understandings of development administration/management in the previous 70 years; the discourse of development; the objectives of developmental local government as prescribed by the state; the opportunities for and challenges to South African local government in its constitutionally defined developmental mandate; the current debate on the end of development and the ascendancy of poverty eradication, and case studies as a methodological approach to putting theory to practical application.

**DP requirements:**
Completion of all written tests, essays, assignments and response papers.

**Assessment:**
Coursework counts 50%; October/November two-hour examination counts 50%.

---

**POL2038F  COMPARATIVE POLITICS**
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Mr Z Jolobe.

**Entrance requirements:** POL1005S.

**Course outline:**
This course introduces students to the major concepts, approaches, themes and topics of inquiry in the field of comparative politics. The course is designed to relate specific theories and relevant case studies and/or empirical evidence. The first part of the course focuses on the broad theme of democratisation and the second on violent processes of political change.

**DP requirements:**
Completion of tests, essays and tutorial presentations.

**Assessment:**
Coursework counts 50%; June two-hour examination counts 50%.

---

**POL3013S  SOUTH AFRICAN POLITICAL THOUGHT AND TRADITIONS**
Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 double-period tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor A Nash.

**Entrance requirements:** POL3032F or POL3030F.

**Course outline:**
A critical study of some major sources and traditions of South African political thinking from about 1900 to the present.

**DP requirements:**
Completion of all essays, assignments and two-thirds of tutorials.

**Assessment:**
Coursework counts 50%; October/November two-hour examination counts 50%.
POL3029S  THIRD WORLD POLITICS
Third-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Ms M Simons.
Lecturers: Ms M Simons and Dr T Reddy.
Entrance requirements: POL3029S, or with special permission by the course convenor.
Course outline:
This course examines political developments in the Third World through the lens of theory and selected case studies. The first part of the course introduces and analyses some key experiences shared by Third World countries. These include colonialism, the challenges of post-colonial "development" and the opportunities and constraints posed by globalisation. We will study how these processes impact on the politics of these societies. The second part of the course provides an in-depth analysis of the politics of Brazil, India and South Africa in comparative perspective.
DP requirements:
Completion of coursework requirements as stipulated in course handbook(s).
Assessment:
Coursework counts 50%; October/November two-hour examination counts 50%.

POL3030F  CONFLICT IN WORLD POLITICS
Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Professor A Seegers.
Entrance requirements: POL2038F and POL2002S, or with special permission by the course convenor.
Course outline: An examination of conflict in world politics.
DP requirements:
Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.
Assessment:
Coursework counts 50%; June two-hour examination counts 50%.

POL3032F  POLITICAL ANALYSIS
Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Professor R Mattes.
Entrance requirements: POL2002S.
Course outline: This course is intended to introduce students to the basic steps and methods involved in empirical political science research. Students will focus on the logic of forming questions and testing hypotheses, conceptualisation, operationalisation, measurement and basic data analysis. An applied research project will also develop skills in a computer-based statistical and analysis package.
DP requirements: Completion of all class assignments and tests.
Assessment: Coursework counts 50%, June two-hour examination counts 50%.

POL3037F  POLICY AND ADMINISTRATION
Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor A Butler.
Entrance requirements: POL2037S.
Course outline: This course explores why conflict over public policy is inescapable. Policy makers try to reconcile antagonistic interests and to accommodate competing demands. Public policy also introduces judgements about fairness, equity and human dignity that cannot be reduced to technical issues for resolution by policy makers and officials. The course first investigates initiatives to provide all South African citizens with electricity, clean water, and a benign environment. It goes on to
investigate government’s contested initiatives to provide citizens with good schooling and to develop an appropriate response to the HIV/AIDS epidemic.

**DP requirements:**
Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:**
Coursework counts 50%; June two-hour examination counts 50%.

---

**POL3038S URBAN POLITICS AND ADMINISTRATION**

Third-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Professor R Cameron.

**Lecturers:** Professor R Cameron and Ms M Simons.

**Entrance requirements:** POL3037F.

**Course outline:**
The first section of the course locates South African local level politics and administration in the context of national and provincial state reform, and examines the significance of local implementation and service delivery for policy outputs and for the policy process as a whole. A theoretical framework for understanding local government reorganisation is developed and a comparative analysis undertaken of local government reorganisation with particular reference to metropolitan areas. There is in addition a focus on contemporary reforms which have affected South Africa's contemporary urban governance, such as the new megacities, politics-administration interface and developmental local government. The second section of the course introduces students to an overview of contemporary urban political and administrative challenges and opportunities. These challenges and opportunities occur in a context of global and local conditions. The course examines and compares good solutions to urban problems in third and first world cities. In its focus on delivery-level administration and politics, the course provides both intellectual and practical closure to the major sequence of courses on public administration, management and the policy process.

**DP requirements:**
Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:**
Coursework counts 50%; October/November two-hour examination counts 50%.
The Department is housed on Level 4 of the Humanities Graduate School Building. The Departmental code is PSY.
Departmental E-mail: heather.maytham@uct.ac.za. Departmental fax: (021) 650-4104.
Departmental website: http://www.uct.ac.za/depts/psychology

Professor and Head of Department:
C Tredoux, PhD Cape Town

Professors:
D H Foster, BA(Hons) Stell MSc Lond PhD Cantab
J Louw, MA Stell Drs Psych Leiden PhD Amsterdam
M L de G Solms, PhD Witwatersrand

Associate Professors:
P Gobodo-Madikizela, PhD Cape Town
S G Swartz, PhD Cape Town

Senior Lecturers:
T L Dowdall, BA Natal MA Cape Town
K Thomas, PhD (Clin Psych) Arizona

Lecturers:
A Africa, MA Durham MA(Clin Psych) Cape Town
F Boonzaier, MA PhD Cape Town
A Maw, MA (Clin Psych) Cape Town
D Nunez, MPhil Cape Town
L Wild, PhD Cantab

Administrative Officer:
H Maytham, BA Unisa

Senior Secretaries:
R Adams
T Hannival

Secretary (Part-time):
R du Plessis

Child Guidance Clinic

Senior Lecturer and Director:
N Shabalala, PhD UWC

Senior Lecturer:
D Kaminer, MPsych UWC PhD Cape Town

Administrative Assistant:
L Smith

Senior Secretary:
S Manley
**Requirements for a major in Psychology (PSY):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First year</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>One of the following:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY1001W Psychology I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY1003W Psychology Foundation <em>(Extended Degree Programme students only)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Second year</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PSY2006F Research in Psychology I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TWO of the following:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY2003S Social Psychology and Intergroup Relations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY2008F Psychopathology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY2009F Developmental Psychology <em>(was PSY207F)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY2010S Cognition and Neuroscience <em>(was PSY2005S)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Third year</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PSY3007S Research in Psychology II</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TWO of the following:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY3004S Clinical and Community Psychology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY3005S Critical Psychology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY3008F Health Psychology <em>(was PSY306F)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY3009F Applied Cognitive Science</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY3010S Introduction to Clinical Neuropsychology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Prerequisites:**

(i) For PSY2006F: students must have passed PSY1001W and MAM1014F and MAM1016S, or have passed PSY1001W and have attained a score of at least 65% on the Quantitative Literacy Test.


(iii) For PSY2010S: PSY1001W and PSY2006F

(iv) For PSY3007S: PSY2006F

(v) For PSY3008F: PSY2008F or PSY2009F or PSY2005S or PSY2010S

(vi) For PSY3004S: PSY2008F

(vii) For PSY3005S: PSY2003S or PSY2005S or PSY2010S

(viii) For PSY3009F, PSY3010S: PSY2005S or PSY2010S, and PSY2006F

**Note:**

Students who wish to take PSY3004S and have not previously passed PSY2008F may be admitted at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Requirements for distinction in Psychology:**

A distinction in Psychology may be awarded to students who obtain, at a first attempt, a first-class pass in the following four courses:

- PSY2006F
- and one other second-year Psychology course;
- PSY3007F/S
- and one other third-year Psychology course.

**Entrance requirements for Psychology I (PSY1001W):**

1. **First-time entry students** *(students who have not previously attended a tertiary institution):*
   1.1. **Students in named programmes**
   The Department of Psychology will admit first-time entry students to PSY1001W who are registered in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce, Science, and Health Sciences, provided the subject is listed in a programme. Students admitted to PSY1001W in this category will not necessarily have access to all PSY courses. Students who do not meet the criteria stipulated in the table under 1.2 may not major in Psychology.
1.2. **Students in general degrees**

Only students who have both 43+ Matric points and 65% on the Quantitative Literacy Test (QLT) or at least Maths (HG) D or Maths (SG) B have unconditional access to PSY1001W. Students who do not meet these requirements may be allowed into PSY1001W via the routes set out in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Matric points</th>
<th>QLT score</th>
<th>Access to PSY1001W</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>43+</td>
<td>65%</td>
<td>Unconditional access to PSY1001W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43+</td>
<td>60-64%</td>
<td>Registration for MAM1014F and MAM1016S concurrent with PSY1001W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43+</td>
<td>below 60%</td>
<td>MAM1014F and MAM1016S as a prerequisite for PSY1001W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40-42</td>
<td>at least 60%*</td>
<td>Access at the discretion of the HOD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below 40</td>
<td>at least 65%*</td>
<td>Access at the discretion of the HOD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extended BSocSc Degree Programme</td>
<td></td>
<td>Registration for MAM1014F and MAM1016S concurrent with PSY1003W in the first year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Entry of candidates who have achieved a D (or higher) on Maths HG or a B (or higher) on Maths SG is not subject to the QLT criterion, but only to number of Matric points.

2. **Returning students:**

Humanities students who were unable to gain admission to PSY1001W in 2007 due to insufficient Matric points and/or the required Quantitative Literacy Test score will be admitted to PSY1001W in their second year only if they passed six semester courses including MAM1014F and MAM1016S in their first academic year. Humanities students registered prior to 2007 who were unable to gain admission to PSY1001W due to insufficient Matric points or university credits may be admitted to PSY1001W at the discretion of the Head of Department. Returning students from other faculties will not be admitted, unless PSY1001W is required for programme or major purposes.

3. The Head of the Department of Psychology may admit students who do not satisfy the conditions above.

**Entrance requirements for Honours (PSY4000W):**

The PSY4000W course forms the first year of an integrated MA in Psychological Research. (For further information please consult the Faculty of Humanities Graduate School Handbook.) Students who have completed their degrees with Psychology as a major are eligible to apply for Honours in Psychology.

**Professional registration**

To become a Psychologist in one of the recognised areas of Psychology, namely Clinical, Counselling, Educational, Organisational and Research Psychology, a student must complete a recognised Masters degree in Psychology and an appropriate internship at a recognised training institution. The duration of an internship is 12 months. Persons registered from 1 January 2002 have to write an examination set by the Professional Board for Psychology. In addition, to register with the Professional Board for Psychology as a Clinical Psychologist, a one-year community service must be completed.

The Department of Psychology at the University of Cape Town provides training leading towards registration in Clinical Psychology. The School of Management Studies in the Faculty of Commerce provides training leading towards registration in the field of Organisational Psychology. The Professional Board for Psychology has accredited the Honours degree in Psychology at UCT for
the education and training of registered counsellors in the following fields of practice: trauma
counselling, primary mental health, sport counselling, and HIV/AIDS counselling. To register with
the Board, students have to complete the prescribed Honours courses, complete an approved six
months’ practicum at an appropriate training institution, and write the Board’s examination. The
practicum does not form part of the degree.

Course outlines:

**PSY1001W  PSYCHOLOGY I**
First-year, whole-year course, 4 lectures per week, and such tutorial work as may be required.
Convenor: T Dowdall.
Course outline:
Lectures, tutorials, assignments and readings deal with a range of basic areas in psychology such as
psychological research methods, biological psychology, principles of learning, social psychology,
consciousness, intelligence, psychological testing, developmental psychology, memory, personality,
psychopathology, psychotherapy and health psychology.
DP requirements:
Satisfactory completion of all term assignments by due date, completion of all class tests, and
completion of the June examination.
Assessment:
Coursework (term assignments and tests) counts 50%; one two-hour examination in June counts
25%; one two-hour examination in October counts 25% towards the final mark. Students are
expected to complete both June and October examinations as well as meet the DP requirements
before being awarded a pass in this course.

**PSY1003W  PSYCHOLOGY FOUNDATION**
First-year, whole-year course, 4 lectures per week, and such tutorial work as may be required.
Convenor: D Nunez.
Enterance requirements:
PSY1003W is only open to students registered in the Humanities Faculty Quantitative Extended
Degree Programme with a Psychology major (HB055). Students must also be registered for
MAM1014F and MAM1016S.
Course outline:
The course incorporates PSY1001W together with a supplementary programme of intensive tutorials
over the course of the year. These cover the skills necessary to write essays and prepare other
submissions to the Psychology Department and to carry out conceptual analysis of research material
and results.
DP requirements:
As for PSY1001W. Students must also attend all additional tutorials and are required to submit all
written tutorial and essays in draft form before the formal submission dates.
Assessment:
NOTE: This course may only be taken by students in the Quantitative Extended Degree Programme
(HB055). Credit will not be given for this course and for PSY1001W.

**PSY2003S  SOCIAL PSYCHOLOGY AND INTERGROUP RELATIONS**
Second-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr C Bandawe.
Enterance requirements: Students must have passed PSY1001W.
Course outline:
This course introduces students to group conflict and tolerance in South Africa and to some of the
social psychological processes involved in intergroup relations. Included will be a focus on some of
the major theories of prejudice, and metatheoretical critiques of these theoretical approaches. Group
behaviours and social cognitions will be considered, as will issues relevant to the reduction of
intergroup prejudice and conflict. In addition, students will be exposed to issues around psychology
and law. Topics to be covered include crime, deception and policing. There will also be tutorials and
practical exercises.
**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework.

**Assessment:**
Coursework (written assignments and tests) counts 50%; one two-hour examination in October
counts 50% towards the final mark.

**PSY2006F RESEARCH IN PSYCHOLOGY I**
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
*NOTE: This course is a prerequisite for PSY2010S, PSY3007S, PSY3009F and PSY3010S. Students
will therefore only be admitted to PSY2010S, PSY3007S, PSY3009F and PSY3010S if they have
passed PSY2006F.*

**Convenor:** D. Nunez.

**Entrance requirements:** Students must have passed PSY1001W and MAM1014F and
MAM1016S, or have passed PSY1001W and have attained a score of at least 65% on the
Quantitative Literacy Test.

**Course outline:**
This course introduces students to research in psychology. There are four central components: (a)
introduction to research methods in psychology; (b) introduction to statistical analysis in
psychology; (c) qualitative methods in psychology, and (d) psychological measurement.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework.

**Assessment:**
Coursework (essay, tests and projects) counts 50%; one two-hour examination in June counts 50%
towards the final mark.

**PSY2008F PSYCHOPATHOLOGY**
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
*NOTE: This course is a prerequisite for PSY3004S Clinical and Community Psychology. Students
will therefore only be admitted to PSY3004S if they have passed PSY2008F.*

**Convenor:** Associate Professor P. Gobodo-Madikizela.

**Entrance requirements:** Students must have passed PSY1001W.

**Course outline:**
The primary objective of this course is to provide students with an introduction to the study of
psychopathology and the use of diagnostic labelling. Clinical features of major subtypes of
psychopathology will be examined, including issues concerning the classification of mental
disorders. Etiological frameworks for understanding the causes of psychopathology will be
reviewed, with an emphasis on developing an integrated psycho-social perspective.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework.

**Assessment:**
Coursework (essays and tests) counts 50%; one two-hour examination in June counts 50% towards
the final mark.

**PSY2009F DEVELOPMENTAL PSYCHOLOGY (was PSY207F)**
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Dr. L. Wild.

**Entrance requirements:** Students must have passed PSY1001W.

**Course outline:**
This course introduces some of the major theoretical approaches to explaining general patterns and
individual differences in human development from conception to death. Most of the material will focus on the processes that contribute to development in childhood. However, particular emphasis will be placed on the ways in which biological, social and cultural factors interact to shape psychological functioning across the entire life span.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework.

**Assessment:**
Coursework (essays and tests) counts 50%; one two-hour examination in June counts 50% towards the final mark.

---

**PSY2010S  COGNITION AND NEUROSCIENCE** *(was PSY2005S)*
Second-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week.

*NOTE: Students who have passed PSY2005S will not be permitted to take PSY2010S.*

**Convenor:** To be advised.

**Entrance requirements:** Students must have passed PSY1001W and PSY2006F.

**Course outline:**
An introduction to cognitive psychology and neuroscience of cognition. This is a study of the mind as an information processing system, the brain structures and functions that are involved in cognition and the research methods we use to learn about these things. The processes include perception, memory, thinking and language. Typical research methods are introduced as exercises. Disorders of cognition resulting from brain damage give evidence of how the brain works.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework.

**Assessment:**
Coursework (tests and practical assignments) counts 50%; one two-hour examination in October counts 50% towards the final mark.

*Note: This course may be subject to change.*

---

**PSY3004S  CLINICAL AND COMMUNITY PSYCHOLOGY**
Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** A Africa.

**Entrance requirements:** Students must have passed PSY2008F.

**Course outline:**
The lectures in this course consist of a theoretical introduction to psychotherapeutic modalities which range from interventions with individual adults and children, to group and community-based interventions.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework.

**Assessment:**
Coursework (essays and tests) counts 50%; one two-hour examination in November counts 50% towards the final mark.

---

**PSY3005S  CRITICAL PSYCHOLOGY**
Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Professor D Foster.

**Entrance requirements:** Students must have passed PSY2003S or PSY2005S.

**Course outline:**
This course has a central focus on the Psychology of Identities (gender, 'race', class, ethnicity, etc). The course presents various theoretical approaches such as Social Identity Theory, Social Constructionism, Post-Modernism, Rhetorical views, Marxism and historical approaches which are brought to bear on understanding the politics of identities in South Africa. Tutorials may include practical exercises in Critical Discourse Analysis and case presentations.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework.
Assessment:
Coursework (essays and tests) counts 50%; one two-hour examination in November counts 50% towards the final mark.

PSY3007S  RESEARCH IN PSYCHOLOGY II
Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 practical/tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr F Boonzaier.
Entrance requirements: Students must have passed PSY2006F.
Course outline:
Analysis of group comparisons (including t-tests and analysis of variance); data modelling techniques (including table analysis and regression); psychometrics (including item analysis, measurement of intelligence and neuropsychological assessment); qualitative techniques (including narrative and discourse analysis).
DP requirements: Completion of all coursework and at least 70% attendance at tutorials.
Assessment:
Coursework (projects and tests) counts 50%; one two-hour examination at the end of the semester counts 50% towards the final mark.

PSY3008F  HEALTH PSYCHOLOGY (was PSY306F)
Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 practical/tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr H Schomer.
Entrance requirements: Students must have passed either PSY2008F, PSY2009F, PSY2005S or PSY2010S.
Course outline:
This course introduces students to psychological theories, principles and methods applicable to various health care settings. Topics will range from cognitive behaviour analysis and health style change to mind-body interventions, stress inoculation and psycho-neuroimmunology. The course is broadly concerned with the interface of psychological health and physical well-being.
DP requirements: Completion of all coursework.
Assessment:
Coursework (essays and tests) counts 50%; one two-hour examination in June counts 50% towards the final mark.

PSY3009F  APPLIED COGNITIVE SCIENCE
Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 practical/tutorial per week.
Convenor: D Nunez.
Entrance requirements: Students must have passed PSY2005S or PSY2010S, and PSY2006F.
Course outline:
This course deals with various applications of cognitive science to practical and theoretical problems in psychology. Topics covered include connectionist architectures (neural networks), evolutionary psychology, memory in the forensic arena, face recognition and reconstruction, cognitive ergonomics, virtual reality and virtual presence, and artificial intelligence. In addition to lectures and tutorials, students will receive bi-weekly seminars from invited researchers in related fields.
DP requirements: Completion of all coursework.
Assessment:
Coursework (tests and conducting and writing up of research) counts 50%; one two-hour examination in June counts 50% towards the final mark.

PSY3010S  INTRODUCTION TO CLINICAL NEUROPSYCHOLOGY
Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 practical/tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr K Thomas.

Entrance requirements: Students must have passed PSY2005S or PSY2010S, and PSY2006F.

Course outline:
This course is designed to provide a broad general introduction to the field of clinical neuropsychology. Although the general focus of the course is on brain-behaviour relationships and the ways in which cognition and behaviour are controlled by neural systems, we will take an approach that concentrates on the clinical presentation of human neurological dysfunction. Otherwise stated, the course will offer descriptions of the cognitive and behavioural deficits experienced by patients with damage to particular brain regions.

DP requirements: Completion of all coursework.

Assessment:
Coursework (tests and in-class pop quizzes) counts 45%; one two-hour examination in November counts 55% towards the final mark.

Re-examinations in Psychology courses:
Faculty Rule F25 applies to all Psychology undergraduate courses. Re-examination will be granted by the Head of Department to certain students who fail. Re-examination may include the following:
(a) an oral examination;
(b) a further written examination covering specific sections only of the work of the course;
(c) a further written assignment.
Students will be advised by the Head of Department when the re-examination will take place. There are no supplementary examinations in Psychology courses.
RELIGIOUS STUDIES

The Department is housed on the fifth floor of the Robert Leslie Social Science Building. The Departmental code is REL. Departmental email: sibonisiwe.zimu@uct.ac.za. Departmental website: http://www.uct.ac.za/depts/religion Departmental fax number: (021) 689-7575.

Associate Professor and Head of Department:
C A Wanamaker, BA Lincoln MA Illinois MCS Regent PhD Dunelm

Professor and Chair of Religious Studies:
D S Chidester, BA Cal State PhD Calif

Isidore and Theresa Cohen Professor of Jewish Religion and Thought:
Vacant

Robert Selby-Taylor Professor of Christian Studies:
Vacant

Professors:
J R Cochrane, BSc Cape Town MDiv Chicago PhD Cape Town
A I Tayob, BA UDW BA(Hons) Cape Town PhD Temple

Lecturers:
S T Masondo, BA(Hons) HDE MA PhD Cape Town
S Shaikh, BA Unisa BA(Hons) UND MA Cape Town PhD Temple

Administrative Assistant:
U S Smith

Secretary:
P Zimu

Requirements for a major in Religious Studies (REL):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Second year</th>
<th>ONE of the following:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>REL2040F Religion and Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>REL2048S Psychology of Religion (for students also majoring in Psychology or with permission of the Head of Department)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ONE of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>REL2044F African Traditional Religion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>REL2045S Religion in Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>REL2047F Religion, Sexuality and Gender (was REL237F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>REL2048S Psychology of Religion (was REL241S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>REL2049S Religion, Spirituality and Ecology</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Third year</th>
<th>ONE of the following:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REL3034F Religion and Modernity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONE of the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REL3035S Religion, Ethics and Human Rights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REL3037F Religion, Conflict and Violence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Prerequisites:
(i) For REL2040F: completion of REL1002F, REL1004S or REL1006S; or completion of any cognate first-year course in the Humanities Faculty; or permission of Head of Department.
(ii) For REL3034F: completion of REL2040F or REL2048S and any other REL 2000-level course; or completion of two cognate second-year courses in the Humanities Faculty; or permission of Head of Department.

Course outlines:

First-year courses:

REL1002F RELIGIONS PAST AND PRESENT
First-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr S Masondo.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
This course provides an introduction to the study of religion and religions. Students are introduced to the analysis of religious symbols, myths, rituals, ethics and traditions. Special attention is given to indigenous religious traditions (particularly in Africa), Asian religions (including Hinduism, Buddhism, Confucianism and Taoism) and New Religious Movements that have emerged as alternative sources of religious identity and meaning in the world.
Students are expected to attend lectures and tutorials in all sections of the course.
DP requirements:
Submission of all work by due dates, and attainment of an average mark of at least 50% for all assignments.
Assessment:
• Coursework and class tests count 60%.
• One two-hour examination in June counts 40%.
• A 45% subminimum is required for the two-hour examination.

REL1006S JUDAISM, CHRISTIANITY AND ISLAM
First-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr S Masondo.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
This course begins by introducing the religions of the Ancient Near East (Egypt, Mesopotamia and Persia). Students then explore the historical foundations of Judaism, Christianity and Islam through examining the formation and development of sacred texts, techniques of interpretation, and religious practices within these three important religious traditions. By studying these religions, the course reflects on the continuity and diversity of historical traditions, social formations and religious identities in the world.
DP requirements:
Submission of all work by due dates, and attainment of an average mark of at least 50% for all assignments.
Assessment:
• Coursework and class tests count 60%.
• One two-hour examination in October/November counts 40%.
• A 45% subminimum is required for the two-hour examination.

REL1012F/S THINKING IN THE SOCIAL SCIENCES
First-year, first- or second-semester course, 2 lectures per week, 1 tutorial and 1 workshop per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor C Wanamaker.

Entrance requirements: Restricted to first-year students.

Course outline:
This course introduces students to key issues in the social sciences, eg identity, gender and globalisation, as well as to a range of concepts used across the social sciences, eg structure and agency, essentialism and non-essentialism, ideology, power and socialisation. The course uses this content to teach critical thinking skills that will enable a student to analyse, evaluate and construct academic arguments and explanations.

DP requirements:
Satisfactory attendance at tutorials and workgroups, and submission of all written work by the required dates, as specified in the course outline.

Assessment:
• Coursework counts 50%.
• Final examination consisting of a take-home essay counts 25%.
• One two-hour compulsory examination counts 25% (45% subminimum on this examination).

REL1013H THINKING IN THE SOCIAL SCIENCES (EXTENDED CURRICULUM)
First-year, whole-year course, 2 lectures per week, 1 tutorial and 1 workshop per week during first semester and additional classes in the second semester.

Convenor: Associate Professor C Wanamaker.

Entrance requirements: REL1013H is only open to students registered in either the Humanities Faculty Quantitative Extended Degree Programme (HB055) or Non-Quantitative Extended Degree Programme (HB061 or HB062).

Course outline:
The course will introduce extended curriculum students to key concepts and issues used across the Social Sciences. The course uses this content to teach critical thinking skills that will enable students to analyse, evaluate and construct academic arguments and explanations. The work is modulated through a carefully designed set of lectures, tutorials and workshops.

DP requirements:
Satisfactory attendance at tutorials and workgroups, and submission of all written work by the required dates, as specified in the course outline.

Assessment:
• Coursework counts 50%.
• Final examination consisting of a take-home essay and 2-hour written paper counts 50%.

NOTE: This course may only be taken by students in the Humanities Faculty Extended Degree Programmes (HB055, HB061 or HB062). Credit will not be given for this course and for REL1012F/S.

Second-year courses:
(1) Students may apply to the Head of Department to exercise discretion in admitting them to 2000-level courses for which they do not possess the listed prerequisites.
(2) The Department does not undertake to offer all these courses in any one year.

REL2040F RELIGION AND SOCIETY
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week.

Convenor: Dr S Shaikh.

Entrance requirements: Completion of REL1002F or REL1006S; or completion of any cognate first-year course in the Humanities Faculty; or permission of Head of Department.

Course outline:
This course introduces and tests the usefulness of classic and contemporary theories of religion as a social reality. Drawing upon both South African and international case studies, the course develops
descriptive, interpretative, and explanatory methods for analysing the role of religion in social relations, the formation of religious movements and the productions of popular culture. Using critical approaches from the sociology of religion, hermeneutic philosophy and religious anthropology, the course includes explorations of identity, knowledge/power, and religious pluralism. Films are used as one means of exploring the contemporary character of religious consciousness and practice. The Department hosts a "Screening the Sacred" film festival as part of this course where weekly film screenings include both documentaries and feature films.

**DP requirements:**
Submission of all work by due dates, and attainment of an average mark of at least 50% for all assignments.

**Assessment:**
- Coursework counts 40%.
- One two-hour examination in June counts 40%.
- Project counts 20%.

---

**REL2044F AFRICAN TRADITIONAL RELIGION**
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week.
**Convenor:** Dr S Masondo.

**Entrance requirements:** Completion of REL1002F or REL1006S; or completion of any cognate first-year course in the Humanities Faculty; or permission of Head of Department.

**Course outline:**
This course explores the religious heritage and history of Africa through specific case studies in African traditional religion. Special attention is given to continuities and changes in the indigenous religions of Africa through studies in religious beliefs, ritual practices, ways of knowing, techniques of healing, and the social formations of the household, polity and religious specialists.

**DP requirements:**
Submission of all work by due dates, and attainment of an average mark of at least 50% for all assignments.

**Assessment:**
- Coursework counts 40%.
- One two-hour examination in June counts 40%.
- Project counts 20%.

---

**REL2045S RELIGION IN AFRICA**
Second-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week.
**Convenor:** Professor A Tayob.

**Entrance requirements:** Completion of REL1002F or REL1006S; or completion of any cognate first-year course in the Humanities Faculty; or permission of Head of Department.

**Course outline:**
This course explores the dynamics of tradition, change, and religious diversity through case studies in African indigenous religion, African Christianity, African Islam, and other religions in Africa. Emphasis is placed on inter-religious contacts, encounters, and exchanges in colonial and post-colonial situations.

**DP requirements:**
Submission of all work by due dates, and attainment of an average mark of at least 50% for all assignments.

**Assessment:**
- Coursework counts 40%.
- One two-hour examination in October/November counts 40%.
- Project counts 20%.
REL2047F RELIGION, SEXUALITY AND GENDER (was REL237F)
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week.
Convenor: Dr S Shaikh.

Entrance requirements: Completion of REL1002F or REL1006S; or completion of any cognate first-year course in the Humanities Faculty; or permission of Head of Department.

Course outline:
This course explores issues related to ideologies of gender and sexuality in the history of religious traditions, with particular attention to the role of women in religion. Connections between sexuality, embodiment and spirituality will be addressed through case studies in African, Abrahamic and Asian religions.

DP requirements:
Submission of all work by due dates, and attainment of an average mark of at least 50% for all assignments.

Assessment:
- Coursework counts 40%.
- One two-hour examination in June counts 40%.
- Project counts 20%.

REL2048S PSYCHOLOGY OF RELIGION (was REL241S)
Second-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week.

Convenor: Dr S Masondo.

Entrance requirements: Completion of REL2040F; or completion of any cognate second-year course in the Humanities Faculty; or permission of Head of Department.

Course outline:
This course pays special attention to issues of theory and method in the psychology of religion, in order to develop an understanding of personal identity and difference in religious contexts. While recognising the importance of gender, class, race, ethnicity and other social forms of identity, the course focuses on religious dynamics of personal identity through case studies in consciousness, embodiment and cultural resources for being human.

DP requirements:
Submission of all work by due dates, and attainment of an average mark of at least 50% for all assignments.

Assessment:
- Coursework counts 40%.
- One two-hour examination in October/November counts 40%.
- Project counts 20%.

REL2049S RELIGION, SPIRITUALITY AND ECOLOGY
Second-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week.

Convenor: Dr S Shaikh.

Entrance requirements: Completion of REL2040F, or completion of any cognate second-year course in the Humanities Faculty, or permission of the Head of Department.

Course outline:
This course explores the way in which various religions have responded to the current environmental crisis and focuses on how each tradition has drawn on its own symbolic, mythic and ritual resources to develop a distinctive ecological philosophy. The global impact of world religions on contemporary attitudes towards nature is explored. The course also examines contemporary spiritual movements such as Neo-Paganism, Deep Ecology and Eco-Feminism.

DP requirements:
Submission of all work by due dates, and attainment of an average mark of at least 50% for all assignments.
Assessment:
- Coursework counts 40%.
- One two-hour examination in October/November counts 40%.
- Project counts 20%.

**Third-year courses:**
(1) Students may apply to the Head of Department to exercise discretion in admitting them to 3000-level courses for which they do not possess the listed prerequisites.
(2) The Department does not undertake to offer all these courses in any one year.

---

**REL3034F RELIGION AND MODERNITY**
Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week.
Convenor: Professor A Tayob.

Entrance requirements: Completion of REL2040F or REL2048S and any other REL 2000-level course; or completion of two cognate second-year courses in the Humanities Faculty; or permission of Head of Department.

Course outline:
This course will focus on examining and exploring the historicity of religious traditions and their responses to modernity. The following issues will be examined: the role of religion in social context, religion as an explanation of reality, religion as the source of modernity, the culture of modernity in South Africa, the meaning and consequences of the interrelationships between religion and modernity in South Africa.

DP requirements:
Submission of all work by due dates, and attainment of an average mark of at least 50% for all assignments.

Assessment:
- Coursework counts 40%.
- One two-hour examination counts 40%.
- Project counts 20%.

---

**REL3035S RELIGION, ETHICS AND HUMAN RIGHTS**
Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week.
Convenor: Professor J Cochrane.

Entrance requirements: Completion of REL3034F; or completion of any cognate third-year course in the Humanities Faculty; or permission of Head of Department.

Course outline:
This course examines the foundations of ethics and the formation of values from an interdisciplinary and cross-cultural perspective. With a special focus on the question of human rights in the public sphere, the course develops resources for understanding values, critically analysing ethical issues, and participating in ethical decision-making.

DP requirements:
Submission of all work by due dates, and attainment of an average mark of at least 50% for all assignments.

Assessment:
- Coursework counts 40%.
- One two-hour examination counts 40%.
- Project counts 20%.

---

**REL3037F RELIGION, CONFLICT AND VIOLENCE**
Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week.
**Convenor:** Professor J Cochrane.

**Entrance requirements:** Completion of any cognate second-year course in the Humanities Faculty, or permission of Head of Department.

**Course outline:**
This course examines the role of religion in social conflict and violence in local, national and international contexts. Against the background of theoretical definitions of violence as direct physical harm, the violation of humanity, or illegitimate force, the course develops case studies in religion and conflict, with a particular focus on religion, conflict and violence in South Africa.

**DP requirements:**
Submission of all work by due dates, and attainment of an average mark of at least 50% for all assignments.

**Assessment:**
- Coursework counts 40%.
- One two-hour examination counts 40%.
- Project counts 20%.

**Entry requirements for Honours in Religious Studies:**
BA or BSoCSc degrees or their equivalent. Normally, students shall have completed the courses indicated for one of the majors in Religious Studies. Students with an initial degree in another discipline may be required to complete certain courses to achieve equivalence with the requirements for a major in Religious Studies. The degree may be completed in one year (full-time) or two years (part-time). For further information, refer to the entry for Religious Studies in the Faculty of Humanities Graduate School Handbook.
The Department is housed in the Arts Block. The letter code for the Department is SAN. Departmental Internet: socanth@humanities.uct.ac.za. Departmental website: http://web.uct.ac.za/depts/socialanth/aboutsa.htm.

**Acting Head of Department (2008):**
S Frankental, MA PhD Cape Town

**Associate Professor and Head of Department:**
A D Spiegel, MA PhD Cape Town (on sabbatical 2008)

**Professor:**
M E West, MA PhD Cape Town

**Honorary Professors:**
D W Brokensha, BA Rhodes BLitt Oxon MA Cantab DPhil Oxon
J Comaroff, BA Cape Town PhD London
J L Comaroff, BA Cape Town PhD London

**Associate Professor:**
F C Ross, M SocSc PhD Cape Town

**Senior Lecturers:**
L J Green, BA(Hons) PhD Cape Town
S L Levine, BA Bard MA PhD Temple
O B Sichone, BA Zambia MA Sussex PhD Cantab

**Honorary Research Associates:**
R Bray, BA PhD Durham
H MacGregor, MBChB Cape Town MPhil PhD Cantab
W C Pendleton, BA PhD Berkeley

**Administrative Assistant:**
C Petersen

### Requirements for a major in Social Anthropology (SAN):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ONE of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAN1015F Words, Deeds, Bones and Things (replaces SAN1014F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAN1013S Introduction to the Social Anthropology of Development and Difference</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Second year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ONE or TWO of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAN2024S Belief and Symbolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAN2015S Anthropology of Power and Wealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONE of the following (if only one is chosen from the above two):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAN2026F Medical Anthropology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAN2017S Anthropology of Rural Environment (not offered in 2008)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Third year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SAN3014F The Challenge of Culture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAN3015S Anthropology through Ethnography</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Additional compulsory course (not credit bearing):**
SAN2016Z Anthropological Fieldwork (normally taken in third year of study)
Prerequisites:
(i) For SAN2026F: one of AGE103F, SAN1013S, SAN1014F, SAN1015F, or by permission of the Head of Department
(ii) For SAN2015S, SAN2024S and SAN2017S: two of AGE1003F, SAN1013S, SAN1014F, SAN1015F, SAN2026F, or by permission of the Head of Department
(iii) For SAN3014F: two of SAN2024F/S, SAN2026F/S, SAN2015F/S, SAN2017S, or by permission of the Head of Department
(iv) For SAN3015S: two of SAN2024F/S, SAN2026F/S, SAN2015F/S, SAN2017S, SAN3014F, or by permission of the Head of Department
(v) For SAN2016Z: declared intention to major in Social Anthropology and admission to at least two of SAN2024F, SAN2026F, SAN2015S, SAN2017S, SAN3014F, SAN3015S
(vi) Semester Study Abroad students intending to register for SAN2000 and SAN3000 level courses must be able to demonstrate prior understanding of the basic principles of the comparative approach of Social-Cultural Anthropology, including Cultural Relativism and its limitations.

NOTE: All students planning to major in Social Anthropology MUST complete SAN2016Z in their third year of study.

Postgraduate entrance requirements:
(i) Completion of a general BA or BSc programme with a major in Social Anthropology, having attained an average of 65% for the SAN3000-level courses, subject to approval of the Head of Department;
(ii) Graduates of any other programme who have attained 65% in the degree or major will be admitted subject to Departmental review and approval by the Head of Department; or by permission of the Head of Department.

Course outlines:

NOTE: Research Methods components are integrated into all undergraduate courses in the form of small research projects. For major students they culminate in the non-credit bearing course, SAN2016Z Anthropological Fieldwork.

SAN1013S  INTRODUCTION TO THE SOCIAL ANTHROPOLOGY OF DEVELOPMENT AND DIFFERENCE
First-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr S Frankental.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
Introduction to the social anthropological perspective and its theoretical underpinnings. The course deals with the problems of ethnocentrism and the limitations of cultural relativism and examines how constructions of difference through ideas about culture, ethnicity, race and gender are used to legitimate development discourses. The course thus focuses on comparative analysis of politics and economics in small-scale and complex societies. It includes a small field research project/exercise and uses some visual anthropology as a medium of instruction to introduce ethnographic film.

DP requirements:
All essays, assignments and tests, plus a satisfactory tutorial attendance.
Assessment:
• Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 50%
• One two-hour examination counts 50%, provided a sub-minimum mark of 50% is attained for the examination and that at least half the examination questions required to be answered have been awarded marks of 50% or more.

Re-examination: Students will be entitled to re-examination in the period directly after the examination if they have attained a raw overall aggregate of at least 50% for the course but have
failed to meet the sub-minimum requirement for the examination and have achieved at least 48% for the examination.

**SAN1015F  WORDS, DEEDS, BONES AND THINGS (replaces SAN1014F)**
First-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr S Levine.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
How might one explain the beginnings of our species and diversity of human social, cultural and linguistic forms that have arisen as humans have developed into and now live as modern people? The course compares approaches taken by archaeologists, linguists and social-cultural anthropologists in their attempts to answer such questions. We delve into what lies behind the many ways people interact, communicate and use the material resources around them. Using examples from a wide variety of social, cultural, linguistic and ecological contexts, we address debates about the idea of human evolution; about the relation between nature and nurture and its links with concepts such as race, gender and kinship; and about the social-cultural underpinnings of language use and linguistic variations. A core theme is to understand and recognise the limitations of a cultural relativist approach. A core goal is to introduce students to critical academic skills that enable us to understand the bases on which new knowledge is developed and thereby to recognise how provisional knowledge is.

**DP requirements:**
Attendance at tutorials and submission of all written work, plus class test.
Assessment:
- Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 50%
- One two-hour examination counts 50%, provided a sub-minimum mark of 50% is attained for the examination and that at least half the examination questions required to be answered have been awarded marks of 50% or more.

Re-examination: Students will be entitled to re-examination in the period directly after the examination if they have attained a raw overall aggregate of at least 50% for the course but have failed to meet the sub-minimum requirement for the examination and have achieved at least 48% for the examination.

**SAN2015S  ANTHROPOLOGY OF POWER AND WEALTH**
Second-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures, 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr O B Sichone.
Entrance requirements: Two of AGE103F, SAN1013S, SAN1014F, SAN1015F, SAN2026F; or by permission of the Head of Department.
Semester Study Abroad students must be able to demonstrate understanding of the basic principles of the comparative approach of Social-Cultural Anthropology, including Cultural Relativism and its limitations.
Course outline:
Themes in political and economic anthropology drawn from the following list: development of centralised political systems; identity and politics; political-economy in anthropological perspective; development and gender relations.

**DP requirements:**
All essays, assignments and projects, plus a satisfactory tutorial attendance.
Assessment:
- Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 50%
- One two-hour examination counts 50%, provided a sub-minimum mark of 50% is attained for the examination and that at least half the examination questions required to be answered have been awarded marks of 50% or more.
Re-examination: Students will be entitled to re-examination in the period directly after the examination if they have attained a raw overall aggregate of at least 50% for the course but have failed to meet the sub-minimum requirement for the examination and have achieved at least 48% for the examination.

SAN2016Z  ANTHROPOLOGICAL FIELDWORK

NOTE: This is a non-credit bearing course, compulsory for the major in Social Anthropology.
Third-year course, meetings as arranged.
Convenor: Dr S Frankental.

Entrance requirements: Declared intention to major in Social Anthropology and admission to, but preferably completion of, at least two of SAN2024S, SAN2026F, SAN2015S, SAN2017S, SAN3014F, SAN3015S.

Course outline:
This course comprises participation in a short, supervised fieldwork trip resulting in a compulsory written report. A co- and/or pre-requisite for participation in this fieldwork is the successful completion of small fieldwork exercises, and reports on each, as required by the other courses taken towards the major in Social Anthropology. (Students who complete an independent supervised ethnographic study for the elective course SAN3022F/S may be exempted from the requirement to complete SAN2016Z for purposes of the major in Social Anthropology.)

Assessment:
To pass the course, students must participate fully in the fieldwork project and complete a written report.

SAN2017S  ANTHROPOLOGY OF RURAL ENVIRONMENT
(Not offered in 2008)
Second-year, second-semester course.
Convenor: To be advised.

Entrance requirements: Two of AGE103F, SAN1013S, SAN1014F, SAN1015F, SAN2026F; or by permission of the Head of Department.

Semester Study Abroad students must be able to demonstrate understanding of the basic principles of the comparative approach of Social-Cultural Anthropology, including Cultural Relativism and its limitations.

Course outline:
Anthropological examination of people's environmental interactions examining linkages between rural and urban, conflict and resistance and gender- and age-differentiated responses to environmental disasters. The course focuses also on the social constructedness of space. The course takes a comparative approach with a particular focus on African ethnographic examples. It includes a small field research project/exercise.

DP requirements:
All essays, assignments and projects, plus a satisfactory tutorial attendance.

Assessment:
• Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 50%
• One two-hour examination counts 50%, provided a sub-minimum mark of 50% is attained for the examination and that at least half the examination questions required to be answered have been awarded marks of 50% or more.

Re-examination: Students will be entitled to re-examination in the period directly after the examination if they have attained a raw overall aggregate of at least 50% for the course but have failed to meet the sub-minimum requirement for the examination and have achieved at least 48% for the examination.
**SAN2024S  BELIEF AND SYMBOLISM**

Second-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Dr L J Green.

**Entrance requirements:** Two of AGE103F, SAN1013S, SAN1014F, SAN1015F, SAN2026F; or by permission of the Head of Department.

Semester Study Abroad students must be able to demonstrate understanding of the basic principles of the comparative approach of Social-Cultural Anthropology, including Cultural Relativism and its limitations.

**Course outline:**

Current anthropological approaches to religious belief and ritual, demonstrating the importance of symbols and practices as they are integrated with political and social processes, including gender. Examples are drawn from Africa in particular, with comparative material from Melanesia, Polynesia, the Americas and Europe. The course includes a small field research project/exercise.

**DP requirements:**

All essays, assignments and projects, plus a satisfactory tutorial attendance.

**Assessment:**

- Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 50%
- One two-hour examination counts 50%, provided a sub-minimum mark of 50% is attained for the examination and that at least half the examination questions required to be answered have been awarded marks of 50% or more.

**Re-examination:** Students will be entitled to re-examination in the period directly after the examination if they have attained a raw overall aggregate of at least 50% for the course but have failed to meet the sub-minimum requirement for the examination and have achieved at least 48% for the examination.

---

**SAN2026F  MEDICAL ANTHROPOLOGY**

Second-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures per week, 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Dr S L Levine.

**Entrance requirements:** One of AGE103F, SAN1013S, SAN1014F; SAN1015F, or by permission of the Head of Department.

Semester Study Abroad students must be able to demonstrate understanding of the basic principles of the comparative approach of Social-Cultural Anthropology, including Cultural Relativism and its limitations.

**Course outline:**

Comparative anthropological approaches to the social-cultural aspects of health, disease and health care; health-related beliefs and behaviour in 'Western' and 'non-Western' societies; 'traditional' healers and the transmission of health-related knowledge. The course is particularly concerned with comparative social-cultural understandings of HIV/AIDS, and includes a small field research/exercise project that is likely to focus on that issue as it manifests in southern Africa.

**DP requirements:**

All essays, assignments and projects, plus a satisfactory tutorial attendance.

**Assessment:**

- Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 50%
- One two-hour examination counts 50%, provided a sub-minimum mark of 50% is attained for the examination and that at least half the examination questions required to be answered have been awarded marks of 50% or more.

**Re-examination:** Students will be entitled to re-examination in the period directly after the examination if they have attained a raw overall aggregate of at least 50% for the course but have failed to meet the sub-minimum requirement for the examination and have achieved at least 48% for the examination.
SAN3014F  THE CHALLENGE OF CULTURE
Third-year, first-semester course, 5 lectures per week.
Convenor: Associate Professor F C Ross.
Entrance requirements: Two of SAN2015F/S, SAN2017S, SAN2024S, SAN2026F/S, SAN3015S; or by permission of the Head of Department.
Semester Study Abroad students must be able to demonstrate understanding of the principles of the comparative approach of Social-Cultural Anthropology, including Cultural Relativism and its limitations.
Course outline:
Theories of culture and their historical evolution as they pertain to the development of Social Anthropology and the epistemology of its contemporary perspectives, including post-modern approaches and critiques thereof. The course uses a range of ethnographic examples, drawn comparatively from around the world to demonstrate how theory has been applied. It includes at least one small field research project/exercise.
DP requirements:
All essays, assignments and projects, plus a satisfactory tutorial attendance.
Assessment:
• Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 50%
• One three-hour examination counts 50%, provided a sub-minimum mark of 50% is attained for the examination and that at least half the examination questions required to be answered have been awarded marks of 50% or more.
Re-examination: Students will be entitled to re-examination in the period directly after the examination if they have attained a raw overall aggregate of at least 50% for the course but have failed to meet the sub-minimum requirement for the examination and have achieved at least 48% for the examination.

SAN3015S  ANTHROPOLOGY THROUGH ETHNOGRAPHY
Third-year, second-semester course, 5 lectures per week.
Convenor: Dr S Frankental.
Semester Study Abroad students must be able to demonstrate understanding of the principles of the comparative approach of Social-Cultural Anthropology, including Cultural Relativism and its limitations.
Course outline:
Critical analyses of the production of ethnographies and their relationship to anthropological theory, as well as to the nature of the anthropological fieldwork method and the positionality of anthropologists. The course draws on ethnographies from throughout the world. It includes a field research project.
DP requirements:
All essays, assignments and projects, plus a satisfactory tutorial attendance.
Assessment:
• Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 50%
• One three-hour examination counts 50%, provided a sub-minimum mark of 50% is attained for the examination and that at least half the examination questions required to be answered have been awarded marks of 50% or more.
Re-examination: Students will be entitled to re-examination in the period directly after the examination if they have attained a raw overall aggregate of at least 50% for the course but have failed to meet the sub-minimum requirement for the examination and have achieved at least 48% for the examination.
SAN3022F/S  SPECIAL TOPIC

NOTE: Students may take this course only once for degree purposes.
Third-year, first- and second-semester course, 2 lectures per week.

Convenor: Head of Department.

Entrance requirements: By permission of the Head of Department.

Course outline:
An advanced independent study course with limited registration, open to students of proven ability to work independently and who are able to identify and, with a member of staff, to design an approved additional course of study in anthropology. This may be an independent supervised ethnographic study or a supervised library-based project developing an area of the discipline not normally available.

DP requirements: All written work and attendance at seminars.

Assessment:
• Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 50%
• One two-hour examination counts 50%, provided a sub-minimum mark of 50% is attained for the examination and that at least half the examination questions required to be answered have been awarded marks of 50% or more.

Re-examination: Students will be entitled to re-examination in the period directly after the examination if they have attained a raw overall aggregate of at least 50% for the course but have failed to meet the sub-minimum requirement for the examination and have achieved at least 48% for the examination.
The Department of Social Development is housed in the Leslie Social Science Building. The letter code for the Department is SWK.

**Associate Professor and Head of Department:**
V Taylor, BA(SW) *UDW* BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc *Cape Town*

**Associate Professor:**
A de V Smit, BSocSc(SW) BCom(Hons) MPubAd *Cape Town* DPhil *Stell*

**Senior Lecturers:**
L Becker, BA(SW) *Stell* BSocSc(Hons)(PSW) MSocSc(ClinSW) *Cape Town*
M G Booyens, BA(SW) BA(Hons)(SW) MA(SW) DPhil *UPE*
C O’Brien, BA(SW) *UDW* BSocSc(Hons)(PSW) *Cape Town* MA *Witwatersrand* PhD *Bradford*
S Sturgeon, BSocSc(SW) Adv Dip PSW MSocSc(ClinSW) *Cape Town*

**Lecturer:**
E T Gxubane, BA(SW) *Witwatersrand* MSocSc *Cape Town*

**Administrative Assistant:**
Vacant

**Senior Secretary:**
E Sanson, BA *Unisa*

**NOTES:**
1. The detailed Social Work curricula may be found in the Rules section of this Handbook.
2. Students who registered until 2006 will be awarded the BSocSc degree; students entering Social Work studies in 2007 and subsequent years will be required to register for the four-year Bachelor of Social Work (BSW) degree.

**Times of meetings of classes for BSocSc curriculum:**
Social Work 3000-level courses: Tuesday to Friday, first semester; arranged departmentally, second semester
Social Work 4000-level courses: Arranged departmentally

**Times of field practica:**
Social Work 2000-level courses: Monday all day, both semesters
Social Work 3000-level courses: Monday all day, first semester; 3 days per week, second semester

**Times of meetings of classes for BSW curriculum:**
Social Work 1000-level courses: Tuesday to Friday, second semester
Social Work 2000-level courses: Tuesday to Friday
Social Work 3000-level courses: To be offered in 2009
Social Work 4000-level courses: To be offered in 2010

**Times of field practica:**
Social Work 1000-level course: One afternoon per week, second semester, arranged departmentally
Social Work 2000-level courses: Monday all day, both semesters
Social Work 3000-level courses: Monday all day, both semesters
Social Work 4000-level courses: Arranged departmentally, first semester

Students are strongly urged to have a driver's licence and be computer literate.
Practicum travel cost:
Students are responsible for the travel costs incurred during practicum placements. Students will receive partial reimbursement for these costs. The amount will be determined by the allocation from the Field Work and Field Stations Committee of the University.

NOTES:
Three streams are offered in the Social Work Programme (see details in the section Named BA and BSocSc Degree Programmes in this Handbook):
1. Psychological Studies
2. Industrial, Organisational and Labour Studies
3. Development Studies and Social Transformation

The Department of Social Development reserves the right to recommend that students not continue with the undergraduate programmes should it become evident that they are not suited to the profession.

Professional registration and conduct
Practice in the field of Social Work is regulated by the South African Council for Social Service Professions, with which all Social Workers must register. The Council lays down the minimum standards of both academic and practical training requisite for professional registration, and the Department of Social Development provides training according to these standards. The University offers a 3-year BSocSc degree in Social Work for students who registered until 2006. These students are required to complete an appropriate Honours degree offered by the Department of Social Development in order to obtain professional registration with the South African Council for Social Service Professions. For students who register from 2007 the University offers a 4-year Bachelor of Social Work (BSW) degree in order to obtain professional registration with the South African Council for Social Service Professions.

Students registered for the professional degrees in social work are required by statute to register from their second year of study with the South African Council for Social Service Professions as a student social worker. As such they are bound by the Council’s professional code of conduct. Students who do not adhere to this code of conduct may be required to terminate their registration in the Faculty. Should a student in the course of his/her studies or who qualifies for the award of the degree that allows for professional registration with the said Council be deemed unfit to practise as a social worker following a professional assessment, the Dean will report the outcome of such professional assessment to the Council and inform the student accordingly.

Course outlines for BSocSc and BSW curricula

First-year courses:

SWK1004S  BASIC PROFESSIONAL INTERACTION
First-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: To be announced.
Entrance requirements: Introductory course and first semester of Psychology 1000-level course for students registered for Social Work, or two first-semester courses.
Course outline:
This course introduces the student to human behaviour and the social environment, group dynamics, interviewing skills and how to engage in professional intervention that is interactive in nature, culturally appropriate and promotes anti-oppressive practice.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.
Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; two-hour November examination counts 50%.

SWK1013S COMMUNITY CONNECTIONS
First-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial/field trip per week.
Convenor: To be announced.
Entrance requirements: Introductory course and first semester of Psychology 1000-level course for students registered for Social Work, or two first-semester courses.
Course outline: This course aims to develop students' understanding of the interactions between different social systems in the context of selected contemporary social issues and the impact of these on individuals, households and communities and the range of resources that target these challenges.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.
Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; two-hour examination counts 50%.

Second-year courses:

SWK2001F INTRODUCTION TO POLITICAL ECONOMY AND THE FOUNDATIONS OF THE SOCIAL SERVICE PROFESSIONS
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week.
Convenor: Mrs S Sturgeon.
Entrance requirements: Unless otherwise approved, the entrance requirements are: Introductory course, Psychology 1000-level course, Sociology 1000-level course, SWK1004S and SWK1013S.
Course outline: The course introduces students to the evolution of social service professions in South Africa and the link between the global, regional and national contexts. It focuses on the political economy of social services in South Africa from the pre- to post-democratic periods.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.
Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; two-hour June examination counts 50%.

SWK2060F SOCIAL WORK ASSESSMENT
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week.
Convenor: Mrs S Sturgeon.
Entrance requirements: Unless otherwise approved, the entrance requirements are: Introductory course, Psychology 1000-level course, Sociology 1000-level course, SWK1004S and one other semester course.
Course outline: This course introduces students to social work as a profession. It provides students with the basic knowledge and skills required for social work assessment of individuals, groups and communities within the South African context.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.
Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; two-hour June examination counts 50%.
SWK2065S  SOCIAL WORK INTERVENTION
Second-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week.
Convenor: Mrs S Sturgeon.
Entrance requirements: Students should have completed SWK2060F, SWK2061F and SWK2070F, as well as one PSY 2000-level course, or one SOC 2000-level course.
Course outline: This theory course provides students with basic concepts, theories and processes required for intervention with individuals, families, groups and communities.
DP requirements: At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.
Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; two-hour November examination counts 50%.

SWK2070F  FIELD PRACTICUM I
Second-year, first-semester course, 1 day per week, 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Mrs S Sturgeon.
Entrance requirements: Unless otherwise approved, the entrance requirements are: Introductory course, Psychology 1000-level course, Sociology 1000-level course, SWK1004S and one other semester course.
Course outline: This course has two components. The Family Programme introduces students to frameworks for analysing families and professional communication with families. In the Individual Attachment Programme students are placed in the field for a supervised practice experience for developing the basic attitudes, knowledge and skills required for a professional relationship.
Practicum day: All day each Monday.
Practicum supervision times: Weekly group supervision at times to be arranged.
DP requirements: Attendance at and completion of the field practice programme and participation in lectures/workshops, seminars and supervision/tutorials; submission of all essays, project reports, field reports, seminar material and other required written work by the due date.
Assessment: Examination by written assignments, structured evaluation of field practice and by oral examination.

SWK2075S  FIELD PRACTICUM II
Second-year, second-semester course, 1 day per week, 1 tutorial per week.
NOTE: Students are expected to undertake an Orientation Programme of one week prior to the commencement of the course. This one-week period falls outside the usual teaching term and is usually the week after the first semester examination period is concluded. Thereafter students are placed in the field for supervised practice in casework.
Convenor: Mrs S Sturgeon.
Entrance requirements: Students should have completed SWK2060F, SWK2061F and SWK2070F, as well as one PSY 2000-level course, or one SOC 2000-level course.
Practicum day: All day each Monday.
Practicum supervision times: Two periods per week by arrangement.
DP requirements: Attendance at and completion of the field practice programme and participation in lectures/workshops, seminars and supervision/tutorials; submission of all essays, project reports, field reports, seminar material and other required written work by the due date.
Assessment: Examination by written assignments, structured evaluation of field practice and by oral examination.
**Third-year courses:**

**SWK3001F  POLITICAL ECONOMY OF SOCIAL SERVICE PROFESSIONS**  
*Offered from 2009*  
Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week.  
**Convenor:** Dr M Booyens.  
**Entrance requirements:** Unless otherwise approved, all SWK 2000-level courses plus either two PSY 2000-level courses or two SOC 2000-level courses.  
**Course outline:**  
The course builds on students' knowledge and understanding of the history of the social service professions and the socio-political economy that frames various government and non-governmental responses to social challenges, particularly at a regional and local level. It critically engages the students with regional social policy issues, structures and processes in order to better understand evolving professional social service practice.  
**DP requirements:**  
At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.  
**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two-hour June examination counts 50%.

**SWK3060F  DEVELOPMENTAL SOCIAL WORK**  
Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week.  
**Convenor:** Dr M Booyens.  
**Entrance requirements:** Unless otherwise approved, all SWK 2000-level courses plus either two PSY 2000-level courses and one PSY 3000-level course, or two SOC 2000-level courses and one SOC 3000-level course.  
**Course outline:**  
In this course, students will explore the dynamics and problems of a poorer area in partnership with people from that area. Students will be asked to assess problems and resources, and within the context of this community, to study and grapple with its deepest problems: issues of local government, housing, crime and safety, poverty and unemployment, AIDS and other health issues, and personal and family problems experienced by the inhabitants. On Fridays a skills session is held to focus on the relevant skill for the particular task under discussion.  
**DP requirements:**  
At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.  
**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two-hour June examination counts 50%.

**SWK3061F  SOCIAL WORK RESEARCH**  
Third-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures per week.  
**Convenor:** Dr C O'Brien.  
**Entrance requirements:** All SWK 2000-level courses plus either two PSY 2000-level courses and one PSY 3000-level course, or two SOC 2000-level courses and one SOC 3000-level course.  
**Course outline:**  
This course provides an introduction to the research process, research methodology and practice. Students are introduced to the practitioner/researcher stance through the exploration of key research themes and issues related to the knowledge, skills and values base of a developmental approach to social work.  
**DP requirements:**  
At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.  
**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two-hour June examination counts 50%.
SWK3065S  PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND MANAGEMENT
Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week.
Convenor: To be announced.
Entrance requirements: All SWK3000F courses plus one PSY 3000-level course or one SOC 3000-level course.
Course outline:
This theory course includes various modules, inter alia Supervision and Human Resource Management, Programme Management, and Professional Ethics.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.
Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; two-hour November examination counts 50%.

SWK3066S  CONTEMPORARY SOCIAL WORK ISSUES
Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures per week.
Convenor: To be announced.
Entrance requirements: Unless otherwise approved, all SWK3000F courses plus one PSY 3000-level course or one SOC 3000-level course.
Course outline:
This theory course includes various modules, inter alia Human Sexuality, Crime and Society, Theory and Practice of Conflict Resolution and Mental Health Issues.
DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.
Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; two-hour November examination counts 50%.

SWK3070F  FIELD PRACTICUM III
Third-year, first-semester course, 1 day per week.
NOTE: Students are expected to undertake an Orientation Programme of one week prior to the commencement of the course. This period falls outside the usual teaching term and is usually the week immediately prior to the commencement of the first semester teaching term. Thereafter students are placed in the field for supervised practice in casework, group work and community work.
Convenor: Mrs S Sturgeon.
Entrance requirements: All SWK 2000-level courses plus either two PSY 2000-level courses and one PSY 3000-level course, or two SOC 2000-level courses and one SOC 3000-level course.
Practicum day: All day each Monday.
Practicum supervision times: Two periods per week by arrangement.
DP requirements:
Attendance at and completion of the field practice programme and participation in lectures/workshops, seminars and supervision/tutorials; submission of all essays, project reports, field reports, seminar material and other required written work by the due date.
Assessment: Examination by written assignments, structured evaluation of field practice and by oral examination.

SWK3075S  FIELD PRACTICUM IV
Third-year, second-semester course, 3 days per week.
Convenor: Mrs S Sturgeon.
Entrance requirements: All SWK3000F courses plus one PSY 3000-level course or one SOC 3000-level course.
Course outline:
Students are placed in the field for supervised practice in casework, group work and community work.

**Practicum days:** Monday - Wednesday.

**Practicum supervision times:** Two periods per week by arrangement.

**DP requirements:**
Attendance at and completion of the field practice programme and participation in lectures/workshops, seminars and supervision/tutorials; submission of all essays, project reports, field reports, seminar material and other required written work by the due date.

**Assessment:** Examination by written assignments, structured evaluation of field practice and by oral examination.

**Fourth-year courses:**

**SWK4000F  SOCIAL RESEARCH**
Fourth-year, first semester, lectures arranged departmentally.

**Convenor:** Dr C O’Brien.

**Entrance requirements:** All SWK3000F courses plus two PSY 3000-level or two SOC 3000-level courses.

**Course outline:**
The course is designed to introduce students to methodologies grounded in the knowledge, skills and values required in research within a southern African development context. The course will familiarise students with social research as a method of systematic enquiry within the broader social service professions with special emphasis on participatory action research, policy research and programme evaluation.

**DP requirements:**
At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; June examination counts 50%.

**SWK4001S  PRACTICE RESEARCH PROJECT**
Fourth-year, second semester, arranged departmentally.

**Convenor:** Dr C O’Brien

**Entrance requirements:** All SWK4000F courses.

**Course outline:**
Students will conduct a limited research project (not exceeding 10 000 words) under supervision. The research will usually be a collaborative exercise with students focusing on a single research problem.

**DP requirements:**
At least 80% attendance of supervision and research seminars; submission of all written assignments by the due dates.

**Assessment:** Students will be assessed continuously and graded in line with incremental learning appropriate to outcomes-based education.

**SWK4030X  CONTEMPORARY FAMILIES IN A CHANGING SOCIETY**
*(Offered from 2010)*
Fourth-year, first semester, lectures arranged departmentally.

**Convenor:** Mrs L Becker.

**Entrance requirements:** All SWK3000F courses plus two PSY 3000-level or two SOC 3000-level courses.
Course outline:
The course is designed to equip students with a conceptual understanding of families and the developmental needs of children in a changing South African context. It includes an overview of selected theoretical and intervention approaches and practice models in working with families and children, and explores the role of caregivers.

DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; June examination counts 50%.

SWK4031X  PSYCHOSOCIAL FUNCTIONING AND EMPOWERMENT
(Offered from 2010)
Fourth-year, second semester, lectures arranged departmentally.
Convenor: To be announced.
Entrance requirements: All SWK4000F courses.

Course outline:
The course examines the social, environmental determinants of mental health. Risk factors are presented and the process of developing protective factors are explored and examined.

DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars and submission of all essays/projects/seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; November examination counts 50%.

SWK4032X  SOCIAL POLICY AND MANAGEMENT
(Offered from 2010)
Fourth-year, second semester, lectures arranged departmentally.
Convenor: Associate Professor A de V Smit.
Entrance requirements: All SWK4000F courses.

Course outline:
The course introduces structures, frameworks and basic tools for policy formulation and analysis. It includes inter alia an introduction to organizational life and management through concepts of planning, decision making, organising and staffing, leadership, supervision and consultation, motivation and management control, funding strategies and financial and information management.

DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars and submission of all essays/projects/seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; November examination counts 50%.

SWK4033X  FIELD PRACTICUM V
(Offered from 2010)
Fourth-year, first semester, arranged departmentally.
Convenor: Mrs S Sturgeon.
Entrance requirements: All SWK3000F courses plus two PSY 3000-level or two SOC 3000-level courses.

Course outline:
The course is designed to facilitate the students' learning to engage critically and reflectively with diverse client systems, selectively implement action strategies and evaluate the effectiveness thereof.

DP requirements:
At least 80% attendance of field practicum; submission of all written assignments by the due dates and an oral examination.
**Assessment:** Students will be assessed continuously and graded in line with incremental learning appropriate to outcomes-based education. This will include individual and/or group assignments and oral examination.

**Postgraduate programmes:**

The following programmes are offered:

BSOCSC (HONS) PROBATION AND CORRECTIONAL PRACTICE
BSOCSC (HONS) CLINICAL PRACTICE IN SOCIAL WORK
BSOCSC (HONS) SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT
BSOCSC (HONS) SOCIAL POLICY AND MANAGEMENT

**Admission requirements:**

A candidate for the degree shall have the following qualifications:

(a) for Clinical Practice: a bachelor’s degree with a major in social work, and be registerable as a social worker by completion with the South African Council for Social Service Professions;

(b) for Social Development, Probation and Correctional Practice and Social Policy and Management: a major in social work or an approved cognate discipline, and;

(c) have appropriate experience.

Admission is by selection.
The Department is housed in the Leslie Social Science Building. The letter code for the Department is SOC. Departmental email: ramela.bhaga@uct.ac.za

**Associate Professor and Head of Department:**
D M Cooper, BSc(Eng) *Cape Town* MSocSc PhD *Birmingham*

**Professors:**
O Crankshaw, BSc(Hons) BA(Hons) MA PhD *Witwatersrand*
J Maree, BSc(Hons) *Rhodes* BA Oxon MA Sussex PhD *Cape Town*
L Ntsebeza, BA *Unisa* BA(Hons) *Cape Town* MA *Natal* PhD *Rhodes*
J Seekings, BA(Hons) Oxon BA(Hons) *Witwatersrand* DPhil *Oxon*

**Associate Professors:**
K Jubber, MA *Witwatersrand* PhD *Cape Town*
M Steyn, BA HED *Unisa* BA(Hons) Stell MA *Arizona* PhD *Cape Town*

**Senior Lecturers:**
Z Erasmus, MSocSc *Cape Town* PhD *Nijmegen*
J Graaff, BA(Hons) LLB Stell MSc *Bristol* Dip Dev Studies *Louvain* PhD *Stell*
J Grossman, BSocSc(Hons) *Cape Town* PhD *Warwick*
J Head, BSocSc(Hons) *Middlesex* PhD *Durham* MPH *UWC*
M D Lincoln, BA(Hons) *Natal* MA *Wilfrid Laurier* PhD *Cape Town*

**Lecturer:**
J de Wet, MA PhD *Cape Town*

**Administrative Assistant:**
R Bhaga

**Secretary:**
N-A Maseti

**Written work and examinations:**
The Department of Sociology requires students in undergraduate courses to submit all written work, to complete class tests, and to write an examination for each course in June and/or November each year. In any undergraduate semester or full-year course in the department, a pass may only be obtained on the basis of at least 35% for coursework and 50% for examination work.

**Requirements for a major in Industrial Sociology (INS):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First year</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ONE of the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC1001F Introduction to Sociology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC1005S Individual and Society</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Second year</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ONE or TWO of the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC2016F Industrialisation and Labour in South Africa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC2015S Comparative Industrial and Labour Studies <em>(not offered in 2008)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC2018S Workers, Trade Unions and Rights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONE of the following <em>(if only one is chosen from the above list)</em>:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC2019F Social Theory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC2030F Poverty, Development and Globalisation <em>(was SOC223F)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC2004S Race, Class and Gender</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC2006S Selected Social Issues I <em>(Ind Soc modules)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Third year
SOC3027F Social Research (Industrial Sociology)
SOC3028S Globalisation, Restructuring and Job Creation (was SOC320S)

Prerequisites:
(i) For any 2000-level SOC course: SOC1001F or SOC1005S or any 1000-level social science course
(ii) For SOC3027F: two 2000-level courses in Sociology, at least one of which must be SOC2016F, SOC2015S or SOC2018S
(iii) For SOC3028S: any two 2000-level courses required for a major in Industrial Sociology

Requirements for a major in Sociology (SOC):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ONE of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC1001F Introduction to Sociology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC1005S Individual and Society</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Second year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ONE or TWO of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC2019F Social Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC2030F Poverty, Development and Globalisation (was SOC223F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC2004S Race, Class and Gender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC2006S Selected Social Issues I (Sociology modules)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONE of the following (if only one is chosen from the above list):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any other 2000-level SOC course (including CRJ2000F Crime and Deviance)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Third year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOC3007F Social Research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONE of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC3008S Democracy, Social Change and Development in South Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOC3026S Diversity Studies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:
(i) For any 2000-level SOC course: SOC1001F or SOC1005S or any 1000-level social science course
(ii) For SOC3007F: any two 2000-level SOC courses or one 2000-level SOC course and CRJ2000F Crime and Deviance
(iii) For SOC3008S and SOC3026S: any two 2000-level social science courses

NOTE: Students may not do both SOC3007F and SOC3027F.

The Department of Sociology regards the following as appropriate disciplines for social science courses: Archaeology, Economic History, Economics, Environmental and Geographical Science, Film Studies, Gender Studies, Historical Studies, Law, Media and Writing, Philosophy, Politics, Psychology and Organisational Psychology, Public Administration, Religious Studies and Social Anthropology. Other disciplines may be considered on motivation.

Students who do not meet the prerequisites for admission to a course may be admitted to a particular course by permission of the Head of Department.

Development Sociology
The following courses are recommended for students wishing to concentrate on Development Sociology:
SOC1001F Introduction to Sociology
SOC1005S Individual and Society
SOC2006S Selected Social Issues I (Development modules)
Diversity Studies
The following courses are recommended for students wishing to concentrate on Diversity Studies:
SOC1001F Introduction to Sociology
SOC1005S Individual and Society
SOC2004S Race, Class and Gender
SOC2006S Selected Social Issues I (Diversity Studies modules)
SOC2016F Industrialisation and Labour in South Africa
SOC2019F Social Theory
SOC2030F Poverty, Development and Globalisation (was SOC223F)
SOC3007F Social Research (with an appropriate project)
SOC3026S Diversity Studies

Labour, Organisational Psychology and Human Resource Management Programme
This programme provides students with an overview of workplace issues, human resource management, organisational psychology and labour relations. It focuses on how to develop and use human resources to their full potential. It also focuses on labour relations, collective bargaining, industrial conflict and its resolution. This programme provides a good foundation for careers in human resource and general management, labour relations and related fields of employment.

The requirements for the completion of this programme are described in the section Named BA and BSc Degree Programmes of this Handbook.

Course outlines:

SOC1001F INTRODUCTION TO SOCIOLOGY
Note:
1. Students who completed SOC1005S in 2006 or before that date, are not permitted to enrol for SOC1001F in 2008.
2. This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term - please consult the Centre for Open Learning.

First-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr J Graaff.
Entrance requirements: None.
Course outline:
People move through life in a set of socially structured institutions like the family, education, work and eldership. How are we shaped by the society around us? What part can we play in shaping our society? How have sociologists tried to make sense of the society around us in which our everyday experience is located? What is the sociological imagination? How does it help us to go beneath surface appearances to better understand what is happening? The course introduces students to major ways in which sociologists have grappled to make sense of historically dynamic society in an increasingly globalized context.

DP requirements: Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.
Assessment: Coursework (incorporating tutorial exercises, assignments and tests) counts 60%; one two-hour examination counts 40% of the final mark.

SOC1005S INDIVIDUAL AND SOCIETY
First-year, second-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr J Graaff.

Entrance requirements: None.

Course outline:
This course explores key issues and activities in South African society today. We live in a society with deeply structured social inequalities and a range of issues and problems which people confront every day. What is actually happening to people positioned differently in society? What is changing and what is continuing? How do ordinary people deal with these issues? What forms of organization and action do they turn to as they try to meet their needs and build lives which are fulfilling and dignified? We examine selected social processes, structures, institutions and behaviours which help us understand these issues and ways of dealing with them.

DP requirements: Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

Assessment: Coursework (incorporating tutorial exercises, assignments and tests) counts 60%; one two-hour examination counts 40% of the final mark.

SOC2004S RACE, CLASS AND GENDER
Second-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr Z Erasmus.

Entrance requirements: See prerequisites under Requirements for a major.

Course outline:
This course introduces and critically examines various understandings of the concepts ‘race’, class and gender. It explores ways in which these categories shape inequalities in South Africa both historically and in the present.

DP requirements: Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

SOC2015S COMPARATIVE INDUSTRIAL AND LABOUR STUDIES
(Not offered in 2008)

SOC2016F INDUSTRIALISATION AND LABOUR IN SOUTH AFRICA
NOTE: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term - please consult the Centre for Open Learning.
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Professor J Maree.

Entrance requirements: See prerequisites under Requirements for a major.

Course outline:
This course examines industrialisation in South Africa and its impact on work, labour, race, gender and class formations in society. It does so in an historical context leading up to the contemporary situation. The role of the state, labour relations legislation, trade unions, strikes and stayaways, managerial strategies and workplace organisation are topics that can be included.

DP requirements: Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

SOC2018S WORKERS, TRADE UNIONS AND RIGHTS
Second-year, second-semester course, 3-4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.
Convenor: Dr J Grossman.

Entrance requirements: See prerequisites under Requirements for a major.

Course outline:
This course explores issues concerning human rights particularly at the workplace, with a focus on the role of trade unions and the lived experience of workers. There often appears to be widespread agreement about many general rights, but events have shown that there are numerous disagreements
when it comes to specific issues, implementation, enforcement and choosing priorities. What does the extension of formal rights mean to the lived experience of workers in the context of class, race, gender and other structured social inequalities? What happens if different rights clash? How do decisions about these issues affect ordinary people? Against the background of the broader questions and issues outlined above, we will examine new protective legislation which extends rights to workers, its enforcement or lack thereof, and some of the main focuses of recent and contemporary debates concerning workers and rights.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

---

**SOC2019F SOCIAL THEORY**

Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor K Jubber.

**Entrance requirements:** See prerequisites under *Requirements for a major*.

**Course outline:**

This course deals with a wide range of social theories - ranging from classical to contemporary. The focus is on theories that serve to account for culture, social structure and human individuality. The course aims at developing integrative, multi-level theorising through an examination of theories that link the biological, psychological, social and cultural. The theories dealt with include those focused on modernity, late modernity and post-modernity; structure and agency; the micro and macro levels of analysis; and mind, self, identity, culture and society.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

---

**SOC2030F POVERTY, DEVELOPMENT AND GLOBALISATION** (was SOC223F)

*NOTE: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term - please consult the Centre for Open Learning.*

Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Dr D Lincoln.

**Entrance requirements:** See prerequisites under *Requirements for a major*.

**Course outline:**

This course examines the great contemporary global problems of poverty and inequality. Sources and selected empirical cases of poverty and inequality are explored, and related development theories and policies are examined. The geographical scope of the course ranges from the local to the international.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

---

**SOC3007F SOCIAL RESEARCH**

Third-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 double period option seminar (Thursday afternoons) per week.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor K Jubber.

**Entrance requirements:** See prerequisites under *Requirements for a major*.

**Course outline:**

This course consists of two components: 1) lectures on research methods and statistics and 2) research option groups in which students get to write a research proposal, conduct a research project, write a research report and orally present a report on their research project. The options vary from year to year and focus on a variety of contemporary South African themes, problems and topics (e.g. education, human rights, women's issues, environment). The lectures provide an introductory course in research methods to equip students to conduct their fieldwork. The research option group meetings deal with substantive, methodological and theoretical issues related to the research project.
and offer personal supervision for research project work.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all tests, assignments as well as submission of draft and final research proposal and draft and final research report.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 70%; one two-hour examination counts 30% of the final mark.

**NOTE:** Credit will not be given for both SOC3007F and SOC3027F.

---

**SOC3008S**  **DEMOCRACY, SOCIAL CHANGE AND DEVELOPMENT IN SOUTH AFRICA**

Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week and seminars by arrangement.

**Convenor:** Professor O Crankshaw.

**Entrance requirements:** See prerequisites under *Requirements for a major*.

**Course outline:**
This course is divided into two six week sections. The first section examines the international debate on the causes and character of contemporary urban inequality and its relevance to understanding urban inequality in South Africa. In reading this literature, students will be provided with fresh concepts with which they can begin to interpret the emerging patterns of inequality in South African cities. The second section examines the meaning of democracy and land rights for women in rural areas that fall under the jurisdiction of chiefs. The focus will be on post-1994 South Africa.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

**NOTE:** Students are advised that this course requires basic numeracy skills. If students did not take Mathematics to Matric level, it is recommended that they take one of the University's basic numeracy courses. The course does not require statistical skills.

---

**SOC3026S**  **DIVERSITY STUDIES**

Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor M Steyn.

**Entrance requirements:** See prerequisites under *Requirements for a major*.

**Course outline:**
Drawing on some trends in contemporary critical social theory, this course will examine the way in which the construction of centres and margins creates differences that have a significant impact on people's life opportunities. Working with a variety of academic, public and popular texts, students will reflect on the operations of power on and within various social positionings in order to understand some of the dynamics of privilege and oppression. Attention will be paid to how current understandings of the greater porosity of the social world and the intersectional/hybrid/non-essentialist nature of identity may be able to provide a more progressive social agenda.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

---

**SOC3027F**  **SOCIAL RESEARCH (INDUSTRIAL SOCIOLOGY)**

Third-year, first-semester course, 3 lectures and 1 double period option seminar (Thursday afternoons) per week.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor K Jubber.

**Entrance requirements:** See prerequisites under *Requirements for a major*.

**Course outline:**
This course consists of two components: (1) lectures on research methods and statistics, and (2) research option groups in which students get to write a research proposal, conduct a research project, write a research report and orally present a report on their research project. The options vary from year to year and focus on a variety of contemporary South African themes, problems and topics (eg, education, human rights, women's issues, environment). The lectures provide an introductory course in research methods to equip students to conduct their fieldwork. The research option group
meetings deal with substantive, methodological and theoretical issues related to the research project and offer personal supervision for research project work.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all tests, assignments as well as submission of draft and final research proposal and draft and final research report.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 70%; one two-hour examination counts 30% of the final mark.

*NOTE: Credit will not be given for both SOC3007F and SOC3027F.*

---

**SOC3028S** GLOBALISATION, RESTRUCTURING AND JOB CREATION
(was SOC320S)
Third-year, second-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Associate Professor D Cooper.

**Entrance requirements:** See prerequisites under Requirements for a major.

**Course outline:**
The course begins with a consideration of different perspectives and definitions of 'globalisation'. Thereafter, it examines industrial and organisational restructuring in the light of globalisation and trade liberalisation. It looks at implications of restructuring for South Africa including job losses and the informalisation of work, and considers strategies for employment creation in relation to macro-economic policy and labour legislation. The course concludes with issues of skills training with respect to employment equity and the impact of various social forces.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

---

**CRJ2000F** CRIME AND DEVIANCE IN SOUTH AFRICAN CITIES
(Not offered in 2008)
Second-year, first-semester course, 4 lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

**Convenor:** Dr E van der Spuy.

**Entrance requirements:** SOC1001F or SOC1005S or any 1000-level social science course.

**Course outline:**
This course focuses on the contribution of sociological and criminological analyses to our understanding of both the causes underlying crime and possible solutions to the crime problem in our society. It considers theories like the Chicago School, functionalism, labelling, subcultural analysis, and the radical critique. It also considers major policy issues in South Africa.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

*NOTE: This course is offered through Sociology by the Department of Criminal Justice.*
STATISTICAL SCIENCES
(Faculties of Commerce and Science)

The Departmental code for Statistics is STA.

Requirements for a major in Applied Statistics (APS):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA1001F/H Statistics 1001</td>
<td>STA1000S Statistics 1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA3030F Inferential Statistics</td>
<td>STA3036S Operational Research Techniques</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:

(i) For STA1001F: a pass in Matriculation Mathematics with at least 50% on the Higher Grade or a C symbol on the Standard Grade (or a pass at A-level or a C symbol at O-level); or MAM1014F and MAM1015S

(ii) For STA1000S: MAM1000W or MAM1002W or MAM1003W or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H or MAM1006H or MAM1012F or STA1001F/S/H. In addition students will be admitted to STA1000S if they are currently registered for MAM1000W or MAM1002W or MAM1003W or STA1001H or have a supplementary examination awarded for STA1001F or MAM1004F in the same year

(iii) For STA2020F: MAM1000W or MAM1002W or MAM1003W or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H or MAM1006H or MAM1012F or STA1001F/S/H and STA1000F/S or STA1006S

(iv) For STA2030S: STA2020F or STA2004F; MAM1000W strongly recommended

(v) For STA3030F: STA2030S

(vi) For STA3036S: STA2020F; recommended STA2030S

Requirements for a major in Statistics (STA):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Semester</th>
<th>Second Semester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAM1000W Mathematics I</td>
<td>STA1006S Statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA3041F Statistics 3041 OR STA3042F Statistics 3042</td>
<td>STA3043S Statistics 3043</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prerequisites:

(i) For MAM1000W: a pass in Matriculations Mathematics with at least 50% on the Higher Grade (or at least a D symbol at A-level) is normally required for provisional registration for MAM1000W. Students who have not reached a satisfactory level at the end of the first quarter will have their provisional registration for MAM1000W cancelled, but will be allowed to register for MAM1005H at the beginning of the second quarter

(ii) For STA1006S: MAM1000W

(iii) For STA2004F: MAM1000W and one of the following: STA1006S or STA1006H

(iv) For STA2005S: DP certificate for STA2004F

(v) For STA3041F and STA3043S: MAM1000W, STA2004F and STA2005S (MAM2000W is strongly recommended)
Course outlines:

**STA1000F and STA1000S  STATISTICS 1000**
First-year, half-course, first and second semesters.
The course is offered in both semesters. Owing to the Mathematics prerequisites, first-year students must attend STA1000S in the second semester.

**Convenors:** To be announced (STA1000F) and Dr L Scott (STA1000S).

**Entrance requirements:** MAM1000W or MAM1002W or MAM1003W or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H or MAM1006H or MAM1012F or STA1001F/H. In addition students will be admitted to STA1000S if they are currently registered for MAM1000W or MAM1002W or MAM1003W or have a supplementary in STA1001F or MAM1004F in the same year.

**Course outline:**

**DP requirements:** At least 40% for year mark.

**Assessment:**
Classwork (test and assignments) counts 40%; one three-hour examination in June (STA1000F) or October/November (STA1000S) counts 60%. Candidates awarded a supplementary examination for STA1000F MUST write this examination in the October/November examination period of the same year.

---

**STA1001F/H  STATISTICS 1001**
STA1001F and STA1001H are identical first-year half-courses given in the first semester and whole year respectively for students who are not registered in the Science Faculty, and provide the necessary Mathematics background for STA1000F and STA1000S.

**Convenor:** Mrs L Zacna.

**Entrance requirements:** A pass in Mathematics with at least 50% on Higher Grade or a C-symbol on Standard Grade or MAM1014F and MAM1015S. For foreign students a pass at A-level or a C-symbol at O-level is required. Registration for STA1001H in February will be standard. Students who pass the first test will be moved to STA1001F. Students who pass Test 2, are permitted to move to STA1001F. All students who have moved to STA1001F must confirm that the change in registration is reflected on the system by early May. Students who fail STA1001F with a final mark of least 35% can appeal to be registered for STA1001H at the beginning of the second term. All STA1001H students may concurrently take STA1000S.

There is a possibility for all STA1001H students to do concurrently STA1000S.

**Course outline:**
1) The Mathematics of Finance. 2) Functions and graphs; straight lines, polynomials, exponential and logarithmic functions. 3) Matrix algebra and linear programming. 4) Counting rules and Binomial Theorem. 5) Differential calculus. 6) Integral calculus. Emphasis will be placed on areas of interest to Business Science students, including applications to Economics.

**DP requirements:** At least 40% for year mark.

**Assessment:** Year mark counts up to 50%; one three-hour examination in June (STA1001F) or October/November (STA1001H) counts 50%.

**WebCT Quizzes:** Each student will be expected to submit answers to a few multiple-choice questions every second week.
There is a Statistics Hot Seat in the Statistics Building (Ground Level of PD Hahn - North Entrance), where students may pose questions and obtain assistance for several hours each week.

**NOTE:** Credit will not be given for more than one of STA1001F/H, MAM1004F, MAM1005S, MAM1000W or MAM1002W.
STA1006S STATISTICS

First-year, second semester course.

Convenor: To be announced.

Entrance requirements: Students will be admitted if they are currently registered for, or have previously passed, MAM1000W.

Course outline:

DP requirements: At least 35% for year mark.

Assessment:
Classwork (test and assignments) counts 35%; October/November three-hour examination counts 65%.

For second- and third-year course descriptions, please refer to the Faculty of Commerce Handbook.
INDEX

Abbreviations and Definitions ................................................................. 8
Academic Calendar, Terms for 2008 ........................................................... 7
Accounting, Department of ..................................................................... 41
African Gender Institute ......................................................................... 43
African Languages and Literatures Section ............................................... 111
African Studies, Centre for ................................................................. 46
Afrikaans - Major ............................................................................. 115
Afrikaans Section ............................................................................... 115
Applied Statistics - Major ..................................................................... 227
Arabic Language and Literature Section ................................................... 118
Archaeology, Department of ................................................................. 48
Archaeology - Major ......................................................................... 48
Business French - Major ...................................................................... 129
Centre for Film and Media Studies ....................................................... 86
Child Guidance Clinic ......................................................................... 189
Classical Studies - Major ................................................................... 120
Classics Section ................................................................................. 119
Commercial Law, Department of ........................................................... 52
Course Codes, Structure of .................................................................... 9
Dance, School of ................................................................................. 53
Dance - Major .................................................................................... 168
Definitions and Abbreviations ............................................................... 8
Degree Programmes offered in the Faculty .............................................. 7
Diploma in Education ............................................................................ 71
Distinguished Professors in the Faculty ................................................... 2
Distinguished Teachers in the Faculty .................................................... 2
Drama, Department of ......................................................................... 55
Drama - Major .................................................................................... 56
Economic History - Major ................................................................... 97
Economics - Major ............................................................................ 62
Economics, School of .......................................................................... 61
Education, Diploma in .......................................................................... 71
Education, School of .......................................................................... 70
English Language and Literature, Department of .................................. 74
English - Major .................................................................................. 75
Environmental and Geographical Science, Department of ..................... 83
Environmental and Geographical Science - Major ................................ 83
Extended Degree Programme: Non-Quantitative .................................. 38
Extended Degree Programme: Quantitative ......................................... 34
Faculty Courses .................................................................................. 39
Faculty Rules ....................................................................................... 10
Fellows in the Faculty .......................................................................... 2
Film and Media Production Programme ................................................. 26
Film and Media Studies, Centre for ..................................................... 86
Film Studies - Major ......................................................................... 87
French Language and Literature Section ............................................... 128
French - Major ................................................................................... 128
Gender Studies - Major ...................................................................... 43
General Information ............................................................................. 1
Geological Sciences, Department of ....................................................... 93
German Language and Literature Section ................................................. 132
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major/Section/Programme</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>German - Major</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidelines for General BA and BSocSc Degree Programmes</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew Language and Literature - Major</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew Language and Literature Section</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historical Studies, Department of</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History - Major</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humanities Students' Council</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial Sociology - Major</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information and Library Studies, Department of</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Systems, Department of</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italian - Major</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italian Studies Section</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jazz Studies - Major</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labour, Organisational Psychology and Human Resource Management Programme</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Languages and Literatures, School of</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law Courses</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law - Major</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linguistics - Major</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linguistics Section</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little Theatre</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Majors in:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afrikaans</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applied Statistics</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archaeology</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business French</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classical Studies</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dance</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drama</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic History</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economics</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental and Geographical Science</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Film Studies</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender Studies</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew Language and Literature</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial Sociology</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jazz Studies</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linguistics</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media and Writing</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organisational Psychology</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philosophy</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Politics</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psychology</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Policy and Administration</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religious Studies</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Anthropology</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sociology</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

Spanish .................................................................................................................. 143
Statistics .............................................................................................................. 227
Visual and Art History ........................................................................................ 96
Xhosa ................................................................................................................... 111
Management Studies, School of ........................................................................ 150
Mathematics and Applied Mathematics, Department of .................................. 154
Mathematics - Major ........................................................................................... 154
Media and Writing - Major .................................................................................. 87
Music - Major ....................................................................................................... 161
Music, South African College of ........................................................................ 159
Named BA and BSoCSe Degree Programmes .................................................... 26
Named Degree Programmes offered in the Faculty ............................................. 7
Officers in the Faculty ........................................................................................... 1
Opera School ....................................................................................................... 159
Organisational Psychology - Major ................................................................. 150
Philosophy, Department of ................................................................................ 177
Philosophy - Major ............................................................................................... 177
Philosophy, Politics and Economics Programme ............................................... 29
Political Studies, Department of ......................................................................... 182
Politics - Major .................................................................................................... 183
Portuguese Language and Literature Section .................................................... 141
Prizes, Scholarships and ...................................................................................... 3
Professional Registration: Psychology ............................................................... 191
Professional Registration: Social Work .............................................................. 212
Psychology, Department of ................................................................................ 189
Psychology - Major .............................................................................................. 190
Psychology, Professional Registration ............................................................... 191
Public Policy and Administration - Major ....................................................... 183
Religious Studies, Department of ...................................................................... 197
Religious Studies - Major ................................................................................... 197
Requirements for Recognition of University Degrees for Teaching Purposes ...... 8
Scholarships and Prizes ....................................................................................... 3
School of Dance .................................................................................................... 167
School of Economics ............................................................................................. 61
School of Education ............................................................................................. 70
School of Languages and Literatures ................................................................. 110
School of Management Studies ......................................................................... 150
Social Anthropology, Department of ................................................................. 204
Social Anthropology - Major ............................................................................... 204
Social Development, Department of ................................................................. 211
Social Work, Professional Registration ............................................................ 212
Social Work Programme ..................................................................................... 30
Sociology, Department of .................................................................................... 220
Sociology - Major ................................................................................................. 221
South African College of Music ......................................................................... 159
Spanish Language and Literature Section ......................................................... 143
Spanish - Major .................................................................................................. 143
Statistical Sciences, Department of ................................................................. 227
Statistics - Major ................................................................................................. 227
Summer Term Courses ....................................................................................... 39
Teaching: Requirements for Recognition of University Degrees ...................... 8
Terms for 2008 ..................................................................................................... 7
UCT Book Award ................................................................................................. 3
Undergraduate Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates awarded in the Faculty ....... 7
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Visual and Art History - Major</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter Term Courses</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xhosa - Major</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>